

# ulm university universität **UUUIM**

# Stochastics II

Lecture notes

Prof. Dr. Evgeny Spodarev

Ulm 2017

# Contents

1	General theory of random functions 2								
	1.1	Random functions	2						
	1.2	Elementary examples	6						
	1.3	Regularity properties of trajectories	7						
	1.4	Differentiability of trajectories	2						
	1.5	Moments and covariance	3						
	1.6	Stationarity and Independence	5						
	1.7	Processes with independent increments	6						
	1.8	Additional exercises	8						
2	Cou	nting processes 2	0						
	2.1	Renewal processes	0						
	2.2	Poisson processes	9						
		2.2.1 Poisson processes	9						
		2.2.2 Compound Poisson process	5						
		2.2.3 Cox process	6						
	2.3	Additional exercises	6						
3	Wie	ner Process 3	8						
	3.1	Elementary properties	8						
	3.2	Explicit construction of the Wiener process 4	0						
		3.2.1 Haar and Schauder functions	0						
		3.2.2 Wiener process with a.s. continuous paths	2						
	3.3	Distribution and path properties of Wiener processes	5						
		3.3.1 Donsker's invariance principle	5						
		3.3.2 Law of large numbers	7						
		3.3.3 Invariance properties	8						
		3.3.4 Path properties	9						
	3.4	Additional exercises	2						
4	Lévy	y Processes 5	3						
	4.1	Infinite Divisibility	3						
	4.2	Lévy-Khintchine Representation	6						
	4.3	Examples	1						
		$4.3.1  \text{Subordinators} \dots \dots$	4						
	4.4	Additional Exercises	7						
5	Mar	tingales 6	9						
	5.1	Basic Ideas	9						
	5.2	(Sub-, Super-)Martingales	1						
	5.3	Uniform Integrability	4						

# Contents

	5.4	Stopped Martingales	78								
	5.5	Lévy Processes and Martingales	83								
	5.6	Martingales and the distribution of the maximum of the Wiener process	85								
	5.7	Additional Exercises	88								
6	Stat	ionary Sequences of Random Variables	91								
	6.1	Sequences of Independent Random Variables	91								
	6.2	Stationarity in the Strict Sense and Ergodic Theory	92								
		6.2.1 Basic Ideas	92								
		6.2.2 Mixing Properties and Ergodicity	95								
		6.2.3 Ergodic Theorem	99								
	6.3	Stationarity in the Wide Sense	102								
		6.3.1 Correlation Theory	102								
		6.3.2 Orthogonal Random Measures	103								
		6.3.3 Integral with respect to an orthogonal random measure	104								
		6.3.4 Spectral Representation	105								
	6.4	Additional Exercises	107								
Bibliography											

# Bibliography

# Foreword

These lecture notes give an introduction into the theory of stochastic processes for undergraduate math students with a background knowledge of basic probability. They originated from a one-term course on random functions held at Ulm University in the years 2007-2017.

The choice of material is canonical and reflects the scope of facts that, in my opinion, is a must for every student interested in advanced probability. I would like to thank my colleagues at the Institute of Stochastics for their valuable help during the creation process of the course. In particular, I am grateful to Prof. V. Schmidt, Dr. J. Kampf, Dr. V. Makogin, Dr. P. Alonso-Ruiz, S. Roth, J. Olszewski, R. Jäger, who contributed both to the concept and the LaTeX setup as well as drew my attention to numerous errors and typos in the preliminary version of the text.

Evgeny Spodarev Ulm, 15.08.2017

# 1.1 Random functions

Let  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$  be a probability space and  $(\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{B})$  a measurable space,  $\Omega, \mathcal{S} \neq \emptyset$ .

#### Definition 1.1.1

A random element  $X : \Omega \to S$  is a  $\mathcal{A}|\mathcal{B}$ -measurable mapping (Notation:  $X \in \mathcal{A}|\mathcal{B}$ ), i.e.,

$$X^{-1}(B) = \{ \omega \in \Omega : X(\omega) \in B \} \in \mathcal{A}, \quad B \in \mathcal{B}\}$$

If X is a random element, then  $X(\omega)$  is a *realization of* X for arbitrary  $\omega \in \Omega$ .

We say that the  $\sigma$ -algebra  $\mathcal{B}$  of subsets of  $\mathcal{S}$  is *induced* by the set system  $\mathcal{M}$  (Elements of  $\mathcal{M}$  are hence subsets of  $\mathcal{S}$ ), if

$$\mathcal{B} = \bigcap_{\substack{\mathcal{F} \supset \mathcal{M} \\ \mathcal{F} - \sigma \text{-algebra on } \mathcal{S}}} \mathcal{F}$$

(Notation:  $\mathcal{B} = \sigma(\mathcal{M})$ ).

If S is a topological or metric space then  $\mathcal{M}$  is often chosen as a class of all open sets of S and  $\sigma(\mathcal{M})$  is called the *Borel*  $\sigma$ -algebra (Notation:  $\mathcal{B} = \mathcal{B}(S)$ ).

- **Example 1.1.1** 1. If  $S = \mathbb{R}$ ,  $\mathcal{B} = \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R})$  then a random element X is called a *random variable*.
  - 2. If  $S = \mathbb{R}^m$ ,  $\mathcal{B} = \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}^m)$ , m > 1, then X is called a *random vector*. Random variables and random vectors are considered in the lectures "Elementary Probability and Statistics" and "Stochastics I".
  - 3. Let  $\mathcal{S}$  be the class of all closed sets of  $\mathbb{R}^m$ . Let

$$\mathcal{M} = \{ \{ A \in \mathcal{S} : A \cap B \neq \emptyset \}, \ B - ext{arbitrary compactum of } \mathbb{R}^m \}.$$

Then  $X: \Omega \to S$  is a random closed set.

As an example we consider n independent uniformly distributed points  $Y_1, \ldots, Y_n \in [0, 1]^m$ and  $R_1, \ldots, R_n > 0$  (almost surely) independent random variables, which are defined on the same probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$  as  $Y_1, \ldots, Y_n$ . Consider  $X = \bigcup_{i=1}^n B_{R_i}(Y_i)$ , where  $B_r(x) = \{y \in \mathbb{R}^m : \|y - x\| \le r\}$ . Obviously, this is a random set. An example of a realization is provided in Figure 1.1.

#### Exercise 1.1.1

Let  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A})$  and  $(\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{B})$  be measurable spaces,  $\mathcal{B} = \sigma(\mathcal{M})$ , where  $\mathcal{M}$  is a class of subsets of  $\mathcal{S}$ . Prove that  $X : \Omega \to \mathcal{S}$  is  $\mathcal{A}|\mathcal{B}$ -measurable if and only if  $X^{-1}(C) \in \mathcal{A}, C \in \mathcal{M}$ .

#### Definition 1.1.2

Let T be an arbitrary index set and  $(\mathcal{S}_t, \mathcal{B}_t)_{t \in T}$  a family of measurable spaces. A family  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  of random elements  $X(t) : \Omega \to \mathcal{S}_t$  defined on  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$  and  $\mathcal{A}|\mathcal{B}_t$ -measurable for all  $t \in T$  is called a *random function* (associated with  $(\mathcal{S}_t, \mathcal{B}_t)_{t \in T}$ ).



Fig. 1.1: Example of a random set  $X = \bigcup_{i=1}^{6} B_{R_i}(Y_i)$ 

Therefore it holds  $X : \Omega \times T \to (\mathcal{S}_t, t \in T)$ , i.e.  $X(\omega, t) \in \mathcal{S}_t$  for all  $\omega \in \Omega, t \in T$  and  $X(\cdot, t) \in \mathcal{A}|\mathcal{B}_t, t \in T$ . We often omit  $\omega$  in the notation and write X(t) instead of  $X(\omega, t)$ . Sometimes  $(\mathcal{S}_t, \mathcal{B}_t)$  does not depend on  $t \in T$  as well:  $(\mathcal{S}_t, \mathcal{B}_t) = (\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{B})$  for all  $t \in T$ .

#### Special cases of random functions:

- 1.  $T \subseteq \mathbb{Z} : X$  is called a random sequence or stochastic process in discrete time. Example:  $T = \mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{N}$ .
- 2.  $T \subseteq \mathbb{R} : X$  is called a *stochastic process in continuous time*. Example:  $T = \mathbb{R}_+, [a, b], -\infty < a < b < \infty, \mathbb{R}$ .
- 3.  $T \subseteq \mathbb{R}^d, d \ge 2: X$  is called a random field. Example:  $T = \mathbb{Z}^d, \mathbb{R}^d_+, \mathbb{R}^d, [a, b]^d$ .
- 4.  $T \subseteq \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}^d) : X$  is called *set-indexed process*. If  $X(\cdot)$  is almost surely non-negative and  $\sigma$ -additive on the  $\sigma$ -algebra T, then X is called a *random measure*.

The tradition of denoting the index set with T comes from the interpretation of  $t \in T$  for the cases 1 and 2 as *time parameter*.

For every  $\omega \in \Omega$ ,  $\{X(\omega, t), t \in T\}$  is called a *trajectory* or *path* of the random function X.

We would like to prove that the random function  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  is a random element within the corresponding function space, which is equipped with a  $\sigma$ -algebra that is now to be specified.

Let  $S_T = \prod_{t \in T} S_t$  be the Cartesian product of  $S_t$ ,  $t \in T$ , i.e.,  $X \in S_T$  if  $X(t) \in S_t$ ,  $t \in T$ . The elementary cylindric set in  $S_T$  is defined as

$$C_T(B_t) = \{ X \in \mathcal{S}_T : X(t) \in B_t \},\$$

where  $t \in T$  is a selected point from T and  $B_t \in \mathcal{B}_t$  a subset of  $\mathcal{S}_t$ .  $C_T(B_t)$  therefore contains all trajectories X, which go through the "gate"  $B_t$ , see Figure 1.2.

#### Definition 1.1.3

The cylindric  $\sigma$ -algebra  $\mathcal{B}_T$  is introduced as a  $\sigma$ -algebra induced in  $\mathcal{S}_T$  by the family of all



Fig. 1.2: Trajectories which pass a "gate"  $B_t$ .

elementary cylinders. It is denoted by  $\mathcal{B}_T = \bigotimes_{t \in T} \mathcal{B}_t$ . If  $\mathcal{B}_t = \mathcal{B}$  for all  $t \in T$ , then  $\mathcal{B}^T$  is written instead of  $\mathcal{B}_T$ .

#### Lemma 1.1.1

The family  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  is a random function on  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$  with phase spaces  $(\mathcal{S}_t, \mathcal{B}_t)_{t \in T}$  if and only if for  $\omega \in \Omega$  the mapping  $\omega \mapsto X(\omega, \cdot)$  is  $\mathcal{A}|\mathcal{B}_T$ -measurable.

# Exercise 1.1.2

Prove Lemma 1.1.1.

#### Definition 1.1.4

Let X be a random element  $X : \Omega \to S$ , i.e. X be  $\mathcal{A}|\mathcal{B}$ -measurable. The distribution of X is the probability measure  $\mathsf{P}_X$  on  $(\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{B})$  such that  $\mathsf{P}_X(B) = \mathsf{P}(X^{-1}(B)), B \in \mathcal{B}$ .

#### Lemma 1.1.2

An arbitrary probability measure  $\mu$  on  $(\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{B})$  can be considered as the distribution of a random element X.

**Proof** Take 
$$\Omega = S$$
,  $\mathcal{A} = \mathcal{B}$ ,  $\mathsf{P} = \mu$  and  $X(\omega) = \omega$ ,  $\omega \in \Omega$ .

When does a random function with given properties exist? A random function which consists of independent random elements always exists. This assertion is known as

## Theorem 1.1.1 (Lomnicki, Ulam):

Let  $(\mathcal{S}_t, \mathcal{B}_t, \mu_t)_{t \in T}$  be a sequence of probability spaces. It exists a random sequence  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  on a probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$  (associated with  $(\mathcal{S}_t, \mathcal{B}_t)_{t \in T}$ ) such that

1.  $X(t), t \in T$  are independent random elements.

2.  $\mathsf{P}_{X(t)} = \mu_t$  on  $(\mathcal{S}_t, \mathcal{B}_t), t \in T$ .

A lot of important classes of random processes is built on the basis of independent random elements; cf. examples in Section 1.2.

#### Definition 1.1.5

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  be a random function on  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$  with phase space  $(\mathcal{S}_t, \mathcal{B}_t)_{t \in T}$ . The *finite-dimensional distributions of* X are defined as the distribution law  $\mathsf{P}_{t_1,\ldots,t_n}$  of  $(X(t_1),\ldots,X(t_n))^T$  on  $(\mathcal{S}_{t_1,\ldots,t_n}, \mathcal{B}_{t_1,\ldots,t_n})$ , for arbitrary  $n \in \mathbb{N}, t_1,\ldots,t_n \in T$ , where  $\mathcal{S}_{t_1,\ldots,t_n} =$ 

 $S_{t_1} \times \ldots \times S_{t_n}$  and  $B_{t_1,\ldots,t_n} = B_{t_1} \otimes \ldots \otimes B_{t_n}$  is the  $\sigma$ -algebra in  $S_{t_1,\ldots,t_n}$ , which is induced by all sets  $B_{t_1} \times \ldots \times B_{t_n}$ ,  $B_{t_i} \in \mathcal{B}_{t_i}$ ,  $i = 1, \ldots, n$ , i.e.,  $\mathsf{P}_{t_1,\ldots,t_n}(C) = \mathsf{P}((X(t_1),\ldots,X(t_n))^T \in C)$ ,  $C \in \mathcal{B}_{t_1,\ldots,t_n}$ . In particular, for  $C = B_1 \times \ldots \times B_n$ ,  $B_k \in \mathcal{B}_{t_k}$  one has

$$\mathsf{P}_{t_1,\ldots,t_n}(B_1\times\ldots\times B_n)=\mathsf{P}(X(t_1)\in B_1,\ldots,X(t_n)\in B_n)$$

#### Exercise 1.1.3

Prove that  $X_{t_1,\ldots,t_n} = (X(t_1),\ldots,X(t_n))^T$  is an  $\mathcal{A}|\mathcal{B}_{t_1,\ldots,t_n}$ -measurable random element.

## Definition 1.1.6

Let  $S_t = \mathbb{R}$  for all  $t \in T$ . The random function  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  is called *symmetric*, if all of its finite-dimensional distributions are symmetric probability measures, i.e.,  $\mathsf{P}_{t_1,\ldots,t_n}(A) = \mathsf{P}_{t_1,\ldots,t_n}(-A)$  for  $A \in \mathcal{B}_{t_1,\ldots,t_n}$  and all  $n \in \mathbb{N}, t_1, \ldots, t_n \in T$ , whereby

$$\mathsf{P}_{t_1,\dots,t_n}(-A) = \mathsf{P}((-X(t_1),\dots,-X(t_n))^T \in A).$$

#### Exercise 1.1.4

Prove that the finite-dimensional distributions of a random function X have the following properties: for arbitrary  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $n \geq 2$ ,  $\{t_1, \ldots, t_n\} \subset T$ ,  $B_k \in \mathcal{S}_{t_k}$ ,  $k = 1, \ldots, n$  and an arbitrary permutation  $(i_1, \ldots, i_n)$  of  $(1, \ldots, n)$  it holds:

- 1. Symmetry:  $\mathsf{P}_{t_1,\ldots,t_n}(B_1 \times \ldots \times B_n) = \mathsf{P}_{t_{i_1},\ldots,t_{i_n}}(B_{i_1} \times \ldots \times B_{i_n})$
- 2. Consistency:  $\mathsf{P}_{t_1,\ldots,t_n}(B_1 \times \ldots \times B_{n-1} \times \mathcal{S}_{t_n}) = \mathsf{P}_{t_1,\ldots,t_{n-1}}(B_1 \times \ldots \times B_{n-1})$

The following theorem evidences that these properties are sufficient to prove the existence of a random function X with given finite-dimensional distributions.

#### Theorem 1.1.2 (Kolmogorov):

Let  $\{\mathsf{P}_{t_1,\ldots,t_n}, n \in \mathbb{N}, \{t_1,\ldots,t_n\} \subset T\}$  be a family of probability measures on

$$(\mathbb{R}^m \times \ldots \times \mathbb{R}^m, \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}^m) \otimes \ldots \otimes \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}^m)),$$

which fulfill conditions 1 and 2 of Exercise 1.1.4. Then there exists a random function  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  defined on a probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$  with finite-dimensional distributions  $\mathsf{P}_{t_1,\ldots,t_n}$ .

**Proof** See [19], Section II.9.

This theorem also holds on more general (however not arbitrary!) spaces than  $\mathbb{R}^m$ , on socalled *Borel spaces*, which are in a sense isomorphic to  $([0,1], \mathcal{B}[0,1])$  or a subspace of that.

#### Definition 1.1.7

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  be a random function with values in  $(\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{B})$ , i.e.,  $X(t) \in \mathcal{S}$  almost surely for arbitrary  $t \in T$ . Let (T,C) be itself a measurable space. X is called *measurable* if the mapping  $X : (\omega, t) \mapsto X(\omega, t) \in \mathcal{S}, (\omega, t) \in \Omega \times T$ , is  $\mathcal{A} \otimes C | \mathcal{B}$ -measurable.

Thus, Definition 1.1.7 not only provides the measurability of X with respect to  $\omega \in \Omega$ :  $X(\cdot,t) \in \mathcal{A}|\mathcal{B}$  for all  $t \in T$ , but  $X(\cdot, \cdot) \in \mathcal{A} \otimes C|\mathcal{B}$  as a function of  $(\omega, t)$ . The measurability of X is of significance if  $X(\omega, t)$  is considered at random moments  $\tau : \Omega \to T$ , i.e.,  $X(\omega, \tau(\omega))$ . This is in particular the case in the theory of martingales if  $\tau$  is a so-called *stopping* time for X. The distribution of  $X(\omega, \tau(\omega))$  might differ considerably from the distribution of  $X(\omega, t)$ ,  $t \in T$ .

# 1.2 Elementary examples

The theorem of Kolmogorov can be used directly for the explicit construction of random processes only in few cases, since for a lot of random functions their finite-dimensional distributions are not given explicitly. In these cases a new random function  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  is built as  $X(t) = g(t, Y_1, Y_2, \ldots), t \in T$ , where g is a measurable function and  $\{Y_n\}$  a sequence of random elements (also random functions), whose existence has already been ensured. For that we give several examples.

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  be a real-valued random function on a probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$ .

1. White noise:

#### Definition 1.2.1

The random function  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  is called *white noise*, if all  $X(t), t \in T$ , are independent and identically distributed (i.i.d.) random variables.

White noise exists according to the Theorem 1.1.1. It is used to model the noise in (electromagnetic or acoustical) signals. If  $X(t) \sim \text{Ber}(p)$ ,  $p \in (0,1)$ ,  $t \in T$ , one means Salt-and-pepper noise, the binary noise, which occurs at the transfer of binary data in computer networks. If  $X(t) \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sigma^2)$ ,  $\sigma^2 > 0$ ,  $t \in T$ , then X is called Gaussian white noise. It occurs e.g. in acoustical signals.

2. Gaussian random function:

#### Definition 1.2.2

The random function  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  is called *Gaussian*, if all of its finite-dimensional distributions are Gaussian, i.e. for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}, t_1, \ldots, t_n \subset T$  it holds

$$X_{t_1,...,t_n} = ((X(t_1),...,X(t_n))^{\top} \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu_{t_1,...,t_n},\sum_{t_1,...,t_n}),$$

where the mean is given by  $\mu_{t_1,\ldots,t_n} = (\mathsf{E}X(t_1),\ldots,\mathsf{E}X(t_n))^\top$  and the covariance matrix is given by  $\sum_{t_1,\ldots,t_n} = ((\mathsf{cov}(X(t_i),X(t_j))_{i,j=1}^n)$ .

## Exercise 1.2.1

Prove that the distribution of a Gaussian random function X is uniquely determined by its mean value function  $\mu(t) = \mathsf{E}X(t), t \in T$ , and covariance function  $C(s,t) = \mathsf{E}[X(s)X(t)], s, t \in T$ , respectively.

An example for a Gaussian process is the so-called Wiener process (or Brownian motion)  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$ , which has the expected value zero  $(\mu(t) \equiv 0, t \ge 0)$  and the covariance function  $C(s,t) = \min\{s,t\}, s,t \ge 0$ . Usually it is additionally required that the paths of X are continuous functions.

We shall investigate the regularity properties of the paths of random functions in more detail in Section 1.3. Now we can say that such a process exists with probability one (with almost surely continuous trajectories).

#### Exercise 1.2.2

Prove that the Gaussian white noise is a Gaussian random function.

3. Lognormal- and  $\chi^2$ -functions:

The random function  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  is called *lognormal*, if  $X(t) = e^{Y(t)}$ , where Y =

 $\{Y(t), t \in T\}$  is a Gaussian random function. X is called  $\chi^2$ -function, if  $X(t) = ||Y(t)||^2$ , where  $Y = \{Y(t), t \in T\}$  is a Gaussian random function with values in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , for which  $Y(t) \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \mathbf{I}), t \in T$ ; here I is the  $(n \times n)$ -unit matrix. Then it holds that  $X(t) \sim \chi_n^2$ ,  $t \in T$ .

4. Cosine wave:

 $X = \{X(t), t \in \mathbb{R}\}$  is defined by  $X(t) = \sqrt{2}\cos(2\pi Y + tZ)$ , where  $Y \sim \mathcal{U}([0, 1])$  and Z is a random variable, which is independent of Y.

#### Exercise 1.2.3

Let  $X_1, X_2, \ldots$  be i.i.d. cosine waves. Determine the weak limit of the finite-dimensional distributions of the random function  $\left\{\frac{1}{\sqrt{n}}\sum_{k=1}^n X_k(t), t \in \mathbb{R}\right\}$  for  $n \to \infty$ .

5. Poisson process:

Let  $\{Y_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  be a sequence of i.i.d. random variables  $Y_n \sim \operatorname{Exp}(\lambda), \lambda > 0$ . The stochastic process  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  defined as  $X(t) = \max\{n \in \mathbb{N} : \sum_{k=1}^{n} Y_k \le t\}$  is called *Poisson* process with intensity  $\lambda > 0$ . X(t) counts the number of certain events until the time t > 0, where the typical interval between two of these events is  $\operatorname{Exp}(\lambda)$ -distributed. These events can be claim arrivals of an insurance portfolio, the records of elementary particles in the Geiger counter, etc. Then X(t) represents the number of claims or particles within the time interval [0, t].

# 1.3 Regularity properties of trajectories

The theorem of Kolmogorov provides the existence of the distribution of a random function with given finite-dimensional distributions. However, it does not provide a statement about the properties of the paths of X. This is understandable since all random objects are defined in the almost surely sense (a.s.) in probability theory, with the exception of a set  $A \subset \Omega$  with  $\mathsf{P}(A) = 0$ .

#### Example 1.3.1

Let  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P}) = ([0, 1], \mathcal{B}([0, 1]), \nu_1)$ , where  $\nu_1$  is the Lebesgue measure on [0, 1]. We define  $X = \{X(t), t \in [0, 1]\}$  by  $X(t) \equiv 0, t \in [0, 1]$  and  $Y = \{Y(t), t \in [0, 1]\}$  by

$$Y(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & t = U, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

where  $U(\omega) = \omega, \omega \in [0, 1]$ , is a  $\mathcal{U}([0, 1])$ -distributed random variable defined on  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$ . Since  $\mathsf{P}(Y(t) = 0) = 1, t \in T$  because of  $\mathsf{P}(U = t) = 0, t \in T$ , it is clear that  $X \stackrel{d}{=} Y$ . Nevertheless, X and Y have different path properties since X has continuous and Y has discontinuous trajectories, and  $\mathsf{P}(X(t) = 0, \forall t \in T) = 1$ , where  $\mathsf{P}(Y(t) = 0, \forall t \in T) = 0$ .

It may well be that the "set of exceptions" A (see above) is very different for X(t) for every  $t \in T$ . Therefore, we require that all  $X(t), t \in T$ , are defined simultaneously on a subset  $\Omega_0 \subseteq \Omega$  with  $\mathsf{P}(\Omega_0) = 1$ . The so defined random function  $\tilde{X} : \Omega_0 \times T \to \mathbb{R}$  is called *modification* of  $X : \Omega \times T \to \mathbb{R}$ . X and  $\tilde{X}$  differ on a set  $\Omega/\Omega_0$  with probability zero. Therefore we indicate later when stating that "random function X possesses a property C" that it exists a modification of X with this property C. Let us hold it in the following definition:

#### Definition 1.3.1

The random functions  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  and  $Y = \{Y(t), t \in T\}$  defined on the same probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$  associated with  $(\mathcal{S}_t, \mathcal{B}_t)_{t \in T}$  have equivalent trajectories (or are called stochastically indistinguishable) if

$$A = \{ \omega \in \Omega : X(\omega, t) \neq Y(\omega, t) \text{ for a } t \in T \} \in \mathcal{A}$$

and  $\mathsf{P}(A) = 0$ .

This term implies that X and Y have paths, which coincide with probability one.

#### Definition 1.3.2

The random functions  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  and  $Y = \{Y(t), t \in T\}$  defined on the same probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$  are called *(stochastically) equivalent*, if

$$B_t = \{ \omega \in \Omega : X(\omega, t) \neq Y(\omega, t) \} \in \mathcal{A}, \ t \in T,$$

and  $\mathsf{P}(B_t) = 0$ ,  $t \in T$ . We can also say that X and Y are versions or modifications of one and the same random function. If the space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$  is complete (i.e. the implication of  $A \in \mathcal{A} : \mathsf{P}(A) = 0$  is for all  $B \subset A$ :  $B \in \mathcal{A}$  (and then  $\mathsf{P}(B) = 0$ )), then the indistinguishable processes are stochastically equivalent, but vice versa is not always true (it is true for so-called separable processes. This is the case if T is countable).

#### Exercise 1.3.1

Prove that the random functions X and Y in Example 1.3.1 are stochastically equivalent.

#### Definition 1.3.3

The random functions  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  and  $Y = \{Y(t), t \in T\}$  (not necessarily defined on the same probability space) are called *equivalent in distribution*, if  $\mathsf{P}_X = \mathsf{P}_Y$  on  $(\mathcal{S}_t, \mathcal{B}_t)_{t \in T}$ . Notation:  $X \stackrel{d}{=} Y$ .

According to Theorem 1.1.2 it is sufficient for the equivalence in distribution of X and Y that they possess the same finite-dimensional distributions. It is clear that stochastic equivalence implies equivalence in distribution, but not the other way around.

Now, let T and S be Banach spaces with norms  $|\cdot|_T$  and  $|\cdot|_S$ , respectively. The random function  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  is now defined on  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$  with values in  $(S, \mathcal{B})$ .

#### Definition 1.3.4

The random function  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  is called

a) stochastically continuous on T, if  $X(s) \xrightarrow[s \to t]{\mathsf{P}} X(t)$ , for arbitrary  $t \in T$ , i.e.

$$\mathsf{P}(|X(s)-X(t)|_{\mathcal{S}} > \varepsilon) \xrightarrow[s \to t]{} 0, \text{ for all } \varepsilon > 0.$$

- b)  $L^p$ -continuous on  $T, p \ge 1$ , if  $X(s) \xrightarrow{L^p}{s \to t} X(t), t \in T$ , i.e.  $\mathsf{E}|X(s) X(t)|_{\mathcal{S}}^p \xrightarrow[s \to t]{} 0$ . For p = 2 the specific notation "continuity in the square mean "is used.
- c) a.s. continuous on T, if  $X(s) \xrightarrow{f.s.}_{s \to t} X(t), t \in T$ , i.e.,  $\mathsf{P}(X(s) \xrightarrow[s \to t]{} X(t)) = 1, t \in T$ .
- d) continuous, if all trajectories of X are continuous functions.

In applications one is interested in the cases c) and d), although the weakest form of continuity is the stochastic continuity.



Why are cases c) and d) important? Let us consider an example.

#### Example 1.3.2

Let T = [0,1] and  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$  be the canonical probability space with  $\Omega = \mathbb{R}^{[0,1]}$ , i.e.  $\Omega = \prod_{t \in [0,1]} \mathbb{R}$ . Let  $X = \{X(t), t \in [0,1]\}$  be a stochastic process on  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$ . Not all events are elements of  $\mathcal{A}$ , like e.g.  $A = \{\omega \in \Omega : X(\omega, t) = 0 \text{ for all } t \in [0,1]\} = \bigcap_{t \in [0,1]} \{X(\omega, t) = 0\}$ , since this is an intersection of measurable events from  $\mathcal{A}$  in uncountable number. If however X is continuous, then all of its paths are continuous functions and one can write  $A = \bigcap_{t \in D} \{X(\omega, t) = 0\}$ , where D is a dense countable subset of [0, 1], e.g.,  $D = \mathbb{Q} \cap [0, 1]$ . Then it holds that  $A \in \mathcal{A}$ .

However, in many applications (like e.g. in financial mathematics) it is not realistic to consider stochastic processes with continuous paths as models for real phenomena. Therefore, a bigger class of possible trajectories of X is allowed: the so-called *càdlàg-class* (càdlàg = continue à droite, limitée à gauche (fr.)).

#### Definition 1.3.5

A stochastic process  $X = \{X(t), t \in \mathbb{R}\}$  is called *càdlàg*, if all of its trajectories are right-side continuous functions, which have left-side limits.

Now, we would like to consider the properties of the notion of continuity (introduced above) in more detail. One can note e.g. that the stochastic continuity is a property of the two-dimensional distribution  $\mathsf{P}_{s,t}$  of X. This is shown by the following lemma.

#### Lemma 1.3.1

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  be a random function associated with  $(\mathbb{R}, \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}))$ , where T is a Banach space. The following statements are equivalent:

a) 
$$X(s) \xrightarrow{\mathsf{P}}_{s \to t_0} Y$$
,  
b)  $\mathsf{P}_{s,t} \xrightarrow{d}_{s,t \to t_0} \mathsf{P}_{(Y,Y)}$ 

where  $t_0 \in T$  and Y is a random variable. For the stochastic continuity of X, one should choose  $t_0 \in T$  arbitrarily and  $Y = X(t_0)$ .

$$\begin{split} & \operatorname{Proof} a) \Rightarrow b) \\ & X(s) \xrightarrow[s \to t_0]{\mathsf{P}} Y \text{ means } (X(s), X(t))^\top \xrightarrow[s, t \to t_0]{\mathsf{P}} (Y, Y)^\top. \\ & \mathsf{P}(\underbrace{|(X(s), X(t)) - (Y, Y)|_2}_{(|X(s) - Y|^2 + |X(t) - Y|^2)^{1/2}} > \varepsilon) \leqslant \mathsf{P}(|X(s) - Y| > \varepsilon/\sqrt{2}) + \mathsf{P}(|X(t) - Y| > \varepsilon/\sqrt{2}) \xrightarrow[s, t \to t_0]{\mathsf{P}} 0 \end{split}$$

This results in  $\mathsf{P}_{s,t} \xrightarrow{d} \mathsf{P}_{(Y,Y)}$ , since  $\xrightarrow{\mathsf{P}}$ -convergence is stronger than  $\xrightarrow{d}$ -convergence.  $b) \Rightarrow a)$ 

For arbitrary  $\varepsilon > 0$  we consider a continuous function  $g_{\varepsilon} : \mathbb{R} \to [0,1]$  with  $g_{\varepsilon}(0) = 0, g_{\varepsilon}(x) = 1$ ,

 $x \notin B_{\varepsilon}(0)$ . It holds for all  $s, t \in T$  that

$$\mathsf{E}g_{\varepsilon}(|X(s) - X(t)|) = \mathsf{P}(|X(s) - X(t)| > \varepsilon) + \mathsf{E}(g_{\varepsilon}(|X(s) - X(t)|)\mathsf{1}(|X(s) - X(t)| \le \varepsilon)),$$

hence

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{P}(|X(s) - X(t)| > \varepsilon) &\leq \mathsf{E}g_{\varepsilon}(|X(s) - X(t)|) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} g_{\varepsilon}(|x - y|) \mathsf{P}_{s,t}(d(x, y)) \\ & \xrightarrow[s \to t_0]{s \to t_0} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} g_{\varepsilon}(|x - y|) \mathsf{P}_{(Y,Y)}(d(x, y)) = 0, \end{split}$$

since  $\mathsf{P}_{(Y,Y)}$  is concentrated on  $\{(x,y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : x = y\}$  and  $g_{\varepsilon}(0) = 0$ . Thus  $\{X(s)\}_{s \to t_0}$  is a fundamental sequence (in probability), therefore  $X(s) \xrightarrow[s \to t_0]{P} Y$ .

It may be that X is stochastically continuous, although all of the paths of X have jumps, i.e. X cannot possess any a.s. continuous modification. The descriptive explanation for that is that such X may have a jump at concrete  $t \in T$  with probability zero. Therefore jumps of the paths of X always occur at different locations.

#### Exercise 1.3.2

Prove that the Poisson process is stochastically continuous, although it does not possess any a.s. continuous modification.

# Exercise 1.3.3

Let T be compact. Prove that if X is stochastically continuous on T, then it also is uniformly stochastically continuous, i.e., for all  $\varepsilon, \eta > 0 \exists \delta > 0$ , such that for all  $s, t \in T$  with  $|s - t|_T < \delta$  it holds that  $\mathsf{P}(|X(s) - X(t)|_{\mathcal{S}} > \varepsilon) < \eta$ .

Now let  $S = \mathbb{R}$ ,  $\mathsf{E}X^2(t) < \infty$ ,  $t \in T$ ,  $\mathsf{E}X(t) = 0$ ,  $t \in T$ . Let  $C(s,t) = \mathsf{E}[X(s)X(t)]$  be the covariance function of X.

#### Lemma 1.3.2

For all  $t_0 \in T$  and a random variable Y with  $\mathsf{E}Y^2 < \infty$  the following assertions are equivalent:

a) 
$$X(s) \xrightarrow{L^2}{s \to t_0} Y$$
  
b)  $C(s,t) \xrightarrow{s,t \to t_0} \mathsf{E}Y^2$ 

**Proof** a  $\Rightarrow b$ 

The assertion results from the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality:

$$\begin{aligned} |C(s,t) - \mathsf{E}Y^{2}| &= |\mathsf{E}(X(s)X(t)) - \mathsf{E}Y^{2}| = |\mathsf{E}\left[(X(s) - Y + Y)(X(t) - Y + Y)\right] - \mathsf{E}Y^{2}| \\ &\leq \mathsf{E}|(X(s) - Y)(X(t) - Y)| + \mathsf{E}|(X(s) - Y)Y| + \mathsf{E}|(X(t) - Y)Y| \\ &\leq \sqrt{\mathsf{E}(X(s) - Y)^{2} \, \mathsf{E}(X(t) - Y)^{2}}_{||X(s) - Y||_{L^{2}}^{2} \cdot ||X(t) - Y||_{L^{2}}^{2}} \\ &+ \sqrt{\mathsf{E}Y^{2} \underbrace{\mathsf{E}}(X(s) - Y)^{2}}_{||X(s) - Y||_{L^{2}}^{2}} + \sqrt{\mathsf{E}Y^{2} \underbrace{\mathsf{E}}(X(t) - Y)^{2}}_{||X(t) - Y||_{L^{2}}^{2}} \xrightarrow{s, t \to t_{0}} 0 \end{aligned}$$

with assumption a).

$$b) \Rightarrow a)$$

Thus,  $\{X(s), s \to t_0\}$  is a fundamental sequence in the  $L^2$ -sense, and we get  $X(s) \xrightarrow[s \to t_0]{} Y$ .  $\Box$ 

## Corollary 1.3.1

The centered random function X, which satisfies the conditions of Lemma 1.3.2, is continuous on T in the mean-square sense if and only if its covariance function  $C: T^2 \to \mathbb{R}$  is continuous on the diagonal diag  $T^2 = \{(s,t) \in T^2 : s = t\}$ , i.e.,  $\lim_{s,t\to t_0} C(s,t) = C(t_0,t_0) = \operatorname{Var} X(t_0)$  for all  $t_0 \in T$ .

**Proof** Choose  $Y = X(t_0)$  in Lemma 1.3.2.

#### Remark 1.3.1

If X is not centered, then the continuity of  $\mu(t) = \mathsf{E}X(t), t \in T$  together with the continuity of C on diag  $T^2$  is required to ensure the  $L^2$ -continuity of X on T.

A random function X, which is continuous in the mean-square sense, may still have discontinuous trajectories. In most of the cases which are practically relevant, X however has an a.s. continuous modification. Later on this will become more precise by stating a corresponding theorem.

#### Exercise 1.3.4

Give an example of a stochastic process with a.s. discontinuous trajectories, which is  $L^2$ continuous.

Now we consider the property of (a.s.) continuity in more detail. As mentioned before, we can merely talk about a continuous modification (or a version) of a process. The possibility to possess such a version also depends on the properties of the two-dimensional distributions of the process. This is stated in the following theorem (originally proven by A. Kolmogorov).

#### Theorem 1.3.1

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \in [a, b]\}, -\infty < a < b < +\infty$  be a real-valued stochastic process. X has a continuous version if there exist constants  $\alpha, c, \delta > 0$  such that

$$\mathsf{E}|X(t+h) - X(t)|^{\alpha} < c|h|^{1+\delta}, \ t \in (a,b),$$
(1.3.1)

for sufficiently small |h|. This modification is a.s. Hölder-continuous with Hölder exponent  $\gamma \in (0, \delta/\alpha)$ .

**Proof** See e.g. [11], Theorem 2.23.

Now we turn to processes with càdlàg-trajectories. Let  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$  be a complete probability space.

## Theorem 1.3.2

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a real-valued stochastic process and D be a countable dense subset of  $[0, \infty)$ . If

a) X is stochastically right-hand side continuous, i.e.,  $X(t+h) \xrightarrow[h \to +0]{P} X(t), t \in [0, +\infty),$ 

b) the trajectories of X at every  $t \in D$  have finite right- and left-hand side limits, i.e.,  $|\lim_{h\to\pm 0} X(t+h)| < \infty, t \in D$  a.s.,

then X has a version with a.s. càdlàg-paths.

Without proof.

#### Lemma 1.3.3

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  and  $Y = \{Y(t), t \ge 0\}$  be two versions of a random function, both defined on the probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$ , with property that X and Y have a.s. right-hand side continuous trajectories. Then X and Y are indistinguishable.

**Proof** Let  $\Omega_X, \Omega_Y$  be "sets of exception", for which the trajectories of X and Y, respectively are not right-sided continuous. It holds that  $\mathsf{P}(\Omega_X) = \mathsf{P}(\Omega_Y) = 0$ . Consider  $A_t = \{\omega \in \Omega : X(\omega, t) \neq Y(\omega, t)\}, t \in [0, +\infty)$  and  $A = \bigcup_{t \in \mathbb{Q}_+} A_t$ , where  $\mathbb{Q}_+ = \mathbb{Q} \cap [0, +\infty)$ . Since X and Y are stochastically equivalent, it holds that  $\mathsf{P}(A) = 0$  and therefore

$$P(\hat{A}) \le \mathsf{P}(A) + \mathsf{P}(\Omega_X) + \mathsf{P}(\Omega_Y) = 0,$$

where  $\tilde{A} = A \cup \Omega_X \cup \Omega_Y$ . Therefore  $X(\omega, t) = Y(\omega, t)$  holds for  $t \in \mathbb{Q}_+$  and  $\omega \in \Omega \setminus \tilde{A}$ . Now, we prove this for all  $t \ge 0$ . For arbitrary  $t \ge 0$  a sequence  $\{t_n\} \subset \mathbb{Q}_+$  exists, such that  $t_n \downarrow t$ . Since  $X(\omega, t_n) = Y(\omega, t_n)$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $\omega \in \Omega \setminus \tilde{A}$ , it holds that  $X(\omega, t) = \lim_{n \to \infty} X(\omega, t_n) = \lim_{n \to \infty} Y(\omega, t_n) = Y(\omega, t)$  for  $t \ge 0$  and  $\omega \in \Omega \setminus \tilde{A}$ . Therefore X and Y are indistinguishable.  $\Box$ 

#### Corollary 1.3.2

If càdlàg-processes  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  and  $Y = \{Y(t), t \ge 0\}$  are versions of the same random function then they are indistinguishable.

# 1.4 Differentiability of trajectories

Let T be a linear normed space.

#### Definition 1.4.1

A real-valued random function  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  is differentiable on T in direction  $h \in T$ stochastically, in the L<sup>p</sup>-sense,  $p \ge 1$ , or a.s., if

$$\lim_{l \to 0} \frac{X(t+hl) - X(t)}{l} = X'_{h}(t), \ t \in T$$

exists in the corresponding sense, namely stochastically, in the  $L^p$ -space or a.s..

The Lemmas 1.3.1 - 1.3.2 show that the stochastic differentiability is a property that is determined by three-dimensional distributions of X (because the common distribution of  $\frac{X(t+hl)-X(t)}{l}$  and  $\frac{X(t+hl')-X(t)}{l'}$  should converge weakly), whereas the differentiability in the mean-square sense is determined by the smoothness of the covariance function C(s,t).

Exercise 1.4.1 Show that

1. the Wiener process is not stochastically differentiable on  $[0, \infty)$ .

2. the Poisson process is stochastically differentiable on  $[0, \infty)$ , however not in the  $L^p$ -sense, p > 1.

#### Lemma 1.4.1

A centered random function  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  (i.e.,  $\mathsf{E}X(t) \equiv 0, t \in T$ ) with  $\mathsf{E}[X^2(t)] < \infty, t \in T$  is  $L^2$ -differentiable in  $t \in T$  in direction  $h \in T$  if its covariance function C is differentiable twice in (t,t) in direction h, i.e., if  $\exists C''_{hh}(t,t) = \frac{\partial^2 C(s,t)}{\partial s_h \partial t_h}\Big|_{s=t}$ .  $X'_h(t)$  is  $L^2$ -continuous in  $t \in T$  if  $C''_{hh}(s,t) = \frac{\partial^2 C(s,t)}{\partial s_h \partial t_h}$  is continuous in s = t. Moreover,  $C''_{hh}(s,t)$  is the covariance function of  $X'_h = \{X'_h(t), t \in T\}$ .

**Proof** According to Lemma 1.3.2 it is enough to show that

$$I = \lim_{l,l' \to 0} \mathsf{E}\left(\frac{X(t+lh) - X(t)}{l} \cdot \frac{X(s+l'h) - X(s)}{l'}\right)$$

exists for s = t. Indeed we get

$$\begin{split} I &= \frac{1}{ll'} \left( C(t+lh,s+l'h) - C(t+lh,s) - C(t,s+l'h) + C(t,s) \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{l} \left( \frac{C(t+lh,s+l'h) - C(t+lh,s)}{l'} - \frac{C(t,s+l'h) - C(t,s)}{l'} \right) \xrightarrow{l,l' \to 0} C_{hh}^{''}(s,t) \,. \end{split}$$

All other statements of the lemma result from this relation.

#### Remark 1.4.1

The properties of the  $L^p$ -differentiability,  $p \ge 1$  and a.s. differentiability of random functions are disjoint in the following sense: there are stochastic processes that have  $L^2$ -differentiable paths, although they are a.s. discontinuous, and vice versa, processes with a.s. differentiable paths are not always  $L^1$ -differentiable, since e.g. the first derivative of their covariance function is not continuous.

# 1.5 Moments and covariance

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  be a random function that is real-valued, and let T be an arbitrary index space.

#### Definition 1.5.1

The mixed moment  $\mu^{(j_1,\ldots,j_n)}(t_1,\ldots,t_n)$  of X of order  $(j_1,\ldots,j_n) \in \mathbb{N}^n$ ,  $t_1,\ldots,t_n \in T$  is given by  $\mu^{(j_1,\ldots,j_n)}(t_1,\ldots,t_n) = \mathsf{E}\left[X^{j_1}(t_1)\cdot\ldots\cdot X^{j_n}(t_n)\right]$ , where it is required that the expected value exists and is finite. Then it is sufficient to assume that  $\mathsf{E}|X(t)|^j < \infty$  for all  $t \in T$  and  $j = j_1 + \ldots + j_n$ .

Important special cases:

- 1.  $\mu(t) = \mu^{(1)}(t) = \mathsf{E}X(t), t \in T$  is the mean value function of X.
- 2.  $\mu^{(1,1)}(s,t) = \mathsf{E}[X(s)X(t)] = C(s,t)$  is the (non-centered) covariance function of X. Whereas the centered covariance function is:  $K(s,t) = \mathsf{cov}((X(s),X(t)) = \mu^{(1,1)}(s,t) - \mu(s)\mu(t), s,t \in T.$

#### Exercise 1.5.1

Show that the centered covariance function of a real-valued random function X

- 1. is symmetric, i.e.,  $K(s,t) = K(t,s), s, t \in T$ .
- 2. is positive semidefinite, i.e., for  $n \in \mathbb{N}, t_1, \ldots, t_n \in T, z_1, \ldots, z_n \in \mathbb{R}$  it holds that

$$\sum_{i,j=1}^{n} K(t_i, t_j) z_i z_j \ge 0$$

3. satisfies  $K(t,t) = \operatorname{Var} X(t), t \in T$ .

Properties 1)-2) also hold for the non-centered covariance function C(s, t).

The mean value function  $\mu(t)$  shows a (non-random) trend. If  $\mu(t)$  is known, the random function X can be centered by considering a random function  $Y = \{Y(t), t \in T\}$  with  $Y(t) = X(t) - \mu(t), t \in T$ .

The covariance function K(s,t) (C(s,t), respectively) contains information about the dependence structure of X. Sometimes the correlation function  $R(s,t) = \frac{K(s,t)}{\sqrt{K(s,s)K(t,t)}}$  for all  $s,t \in T$ :  $K(s,s) = \operatorname{Var} X(s) > 0$ ,  $K(t,t) = \operatorname{Var} X(t) > 0$  is used instead of K and C, respectively. Because of the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality it holds that  $|R(s,t)| \leq 1$ ,  $s,t \in T$ . The set of all mixed moments in general does not (uniquely) determine the distribution of a random function.

#### Exercise 1.5.2

Give an example of different random functions  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  and  $Y = \{Y(t), t \in T\}$ , for which it holds that  $\mathsf{E}X(t) = \mathsf{E}Y(t), t \in T$  and  $\mathsf{E}(X(s)X(t)) = \mathsf{E}(Y(s)Y(t)), s, t \in T$ .

#### Exercise 1.5.3

Let  $\mu: T \to \mathbb{R}$  be a measurable function and  $K: T \times T \to \mathbb{R}$  be a positive semidefinite symmetric function. Prove that there exists a random function  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  with  $\mathsf{E}X(t) = \mu(t)$ ,  $\mathsf{cov}(X(s), X(t)) = K(s, t), s, t \in T$ .

Let now  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  be a real-valued random function with  $\mathsf{E} |X(t)|^k < \infty, t \in T$ , for a  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ .

#### Definition 1.5.2

The mean increment of order k of X is given by  $\gamma_k(s,t) = \mathsf{E}(X(s) - X(t))^k, s, t \in T.$ 

Special attention is paid to the function  $\gamma(s,t) = \frac{1}{2}\gamma_2(s,t) = \frac{1}{2}\mathsf{E}(X(s) - X(t))^2$ ,  $s,t \in T$ , which is called *variogram of* X. In geostatistics the variogram is often used instead of the covariance function. Sometimes we discard the condition  $\mathsf{E}X^2(t) < \infty$ ,  $t \in T$ , instead we assume that  $\gamma(s,t) < \infty$  for all  $s,t \in T$ .

#### Exercise 1.5.4

Prove that there exist random functions without finite second moments with  $\gamma(s,t) < \infty$ ,  $s, t \in T$ .

#### Exercise 1.5.5

Show that for a random function  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  with mean value function  $\mu$  and covariance function K it holds that:

$$\gamma(s,t) = \frac{K(s,s) + K(t,t)}{2} - K(s,t) + \frac{1}{2}(\mu(s) - \mu(t))^2, \quad s,t \in T.$$

If the random function X is *complex-valued*, i.e.,  $X : \Omega \times T \to \mathbb{C}$ , with  $\mathsf{E} |X(t)|^2 < \infty, t \in T$ , then the covariance function of X is introduced as  $K(s,t) = \mathsf{E}(X(s) - \mathsf{E}X(s))(\overline{X(t) - \mathsf{E}X(t)})$ ,  $s,t \in T$ , where  $\overline{z}$  is the complex conjugate of  $z \in \mathbb{C}$ . Then it holds that  $K(s,t) = \overline{K(t,s)}$ ,  $s,t \in T$ , and K is positive semidefinite, i.e., for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}, t_1, \ldots, t_n \in T, z_1, \ldots, z_n \in \mathbb{C}$  it holds that  $\sum_{i,j=1}^n K(t_i, t_j) z_i \overline{z_j} \ge 0$ .

# 1.6 Stationarity and Independence

Let T be a subset of the linear vector space with operations +, - over space  $\mathbb{R}$ .

#### Definition 1.6.1

The random function  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  is called *stationary* (*strict sense stationary*) if for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}, h, t_1, \ldots, t_n \in T$  with  $t_1 + h, \ldots, t_n + h \in T$  it holds that:

$$\mathsf{P}_{(X(t_1),...,X(t_n))} = \mathsf{P}_{(X(t_1+h),...,X(t_n+h))}$$

i.e., all finite-dimensional distributions of X are invariant with respect to translations in T.

#### Definition 1.6.2

A (complex-valued) random function  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  is called *second-order stationary* (or *wide sense stationary*) if  $\mathsf{E}|X(t)|^2 < \infty$ ,  $t \in T$ , and  $\mu(t) \equiv \mathsf{E}X(t) \equiv \mu$ ,  $t \in T$ ,  $K(s,t) = \mathsf{cov}(X(s), X(t)) = K(s+h,t+h)$  for all  $h, s, t \in T : s+h, t+h \in T$ .

If X is second-order stationary, it is convenient to introduce a function  $K(t) := K(0, t), t \in T$ whereby  $0 \in T$ .

Strict sense stationarity and wide sense stationarity do not result from each other. However it is clear that if a complex-valued random function is strict sense stationary and possesses finite second-order moments, then the function is also second-order stationary.

#### Definition 1.6.3

A real-valued random function  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  is *intrinsic second-order stationary* if  $\gamma_k(s,t), s, t \in T$  exist for  $k \leq 2$ , and for all  $s, t, h \in T, s+h, t+h \in T$  it holds that  $\gamma_1(s,t) = 0$ ,  $\gamma_2(s,t) = \gamma_2(s+h,t+h)$ .

For real-valued random functions, intrinsic second-order stationarity is more general than second-order stationarity since the existence of  $\mathsf{E}|X(t)|^2$ ,  $t \in T$  is not required.

The analogue of the stationarity of increments of X also exists in strict sense.

#### Definition 1.6.4

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  be a real-valued stochastic process,  $T \subset \mathbb{R}$ . It is said that X

- 1. possesses stationary increments if for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $h, t_0, t_1, t_2, \ldots, t_n \in T$ , with  $t_0 < t_1 < t_2 < \ldots < t_n, t_i + h \in T, i = 0, \ldots, n$  the distribution of  $(X(t_1 + h) X(t_0 + h), \ldots, X(t_n + h) X(t_{n-1} + h))^{\top}$  does not depend on h.
- 2. possesses independent increments if for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $t_0, t_1, \ldots, t_n \in T$  with  $t_0 < t_1 < \ldots < t_n$  the random variables  $X(t_0), X(t_1) X(t_0), \ldots, X(t_n) X(t_{n-1})$  are pairwise independent.

Let  $(S_1, \mathcal{B}_1)$  and  $(S_2, \mathcal{B}_2)$  be measurable spaces. In general it is said that two random elements  $X : \Omega \to S_1$  and  $Y : \Omega \to S_2$  are *independent* on the same probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$  if  $\mathsf{P}(X \in A_1, Y \in A_2) = \mathsf{P}(X \in A_1)\mathsf{P}(Y \in A_2)$  for all  $A_1 \in \mathcal{B}_1, A_2 \in \mathcal{B}_2$ .

This definition can be applied to the independence of random functions X and Y with phase space  $(S_T, \mathcal{B}_T)$ , since they can be considered as random elements with  $S_1 = S_2 = S_T$ ,  $\mathcal{B}_1 = \mathcal{B}_2 = \mathcal{B}_T$  (cf. Lemma 1.1.1). The same holds for the independence of a random element (or a random function) X and of a sub- $\sigma$ -algebra  $\mathcal{G} \subseteq \mathcal{A}$ : this is the case if  $\mathsf{P}(\{X \in A\} \cap G) = \mathsf{P}(X \in A)\mathsf{P}(G)$ , for all  $A \in \mathcal{B}_1, G \in \mathcal{G}$  (or  $A \in \mathcal{B}_T, G \in \mathcal{G}$ ).

# 1.7 Processes with independent increments

In this section we concentrate on the properties and existence of processes with independent increments.

Let  $\{\varphi_{s,t}, s, t \ge 0\}$  be a family of characteristic functions of probability measures  $Q_{s,t}, s, t \ge 0$ on  $\mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R})$ , i.e., for  $z \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $s, t \ge 0$  it holds that  $\varphi_{s,t}(z) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{izx} Q_{s,t}(dx)$ .

#### Theorem 1.7.1

There exists a stochastic process  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  with independent increments with the property that for all  $s, t \ge 0$  the characteristic function of X(t) - X(s) is equal to  $\varphi_{s,t}$  if and only if

$$\varphi_{s,t} = \varphi_{s,u}\varphi_{u,t} \tag{1.7.1}$$

for all  $0 \le s < u < t < \infty$ . Thereby the distribution of X(0) can be chosen arbitrarily.

**Proof** The necessity of the condition (1.7.1) is clear since for all  $s, u, t \in (0, \infty)$  : s < u < tit holds  $X(t) - X(s) = \underbrace{X(t) - X(u)}_{Y_1} + \underbrace{X(u) - X(s)}_{Y_2}$ , and X(t) - X(u) and X(u) - X(s) are independent. Then it holds  $\varphi_{s,t} = \varphi_{Y_1+Y_2} = \varphi_{Y_1}\varphi_{Y_2} = \varphi_{s,u}\varphi_{u,t}$ .

Now we prove the sufficiency.

If the existence of a process X with independent increments and property  $\varphi_{X(t)-X(s)} = \varphi_{s,t}$ on a probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$  had already been proven, one could define the characteristic functions of its finite-dimensional distributions with the help of  $\{\varphi_{s,t}\}$  as follows.

Let  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $0 = t_0 < t_1 < \ldots < t_n < \infty$  and  $Y = (X(t_0), X(t_1) - X(t_0), \ldots, X(t_n) - X(t_{n-1}))^\top$ . The independence of increments results in

$$\varphi_Y(\underbrace{z_0, z_1, \dots, z_n}_{z}) = \mathsf{E}e^{i\langle z, Y \rangle} = \varphi_{X(t_0)}(z_0)\varphi_{t_0, t_1}(z_1) \dots \varphi_{t_{n-1}, t_n}(z_n), \ z \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1},$$

where the distribution of  $X(t_0)$  is an arbitrary probability measure  $Q_0$  on  $\mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R})$ . For  $X_{t_0,\ldots,t_n} = (X(t_0), X(t_1), \ldots, X(t_n))^\top$  however it holds that  $X_{t_0,\ldots,t_n} = AY$ , where

	(	1	0	0	 0)	
		1	1	0	 0	
A =		1	1	1	 0	
		1	1	1	 1 /	

Then  $\varphi_{X_{t_0,\ldots,t_n}}(z) = \varphi_{AY}(z) = \mathsf{E}e^{i\langle z,AY \rangle} = \mathsf{E}e^{i\langle A^\top z,Y \rangle} = \varphi_Y(A^\top z)$  holds. Therefore the distribution of  $X_{t_0,\ldots,t_n}$  possesses the characteristic function  $\varphi_{X_{t_0,\ldots,t_n}}(z) = \varphi_{Q_0}(l_0)\varphi_{t_0,t_1}(l_1)\ldots\varphi_{t_{n-1},t_n}(l_n)$ ,

where  $l = (l_0, l_1, ..., l_n)^{\top} = A^{\top} z$ , thus

$$\begin{cases} l_0 = z_0 + \ldots + z_n \\ l_1 = z_1 + \ldots + z_n \\ \vdots \\ l_n = z_n \end{cases}$$

Thereby  $\varphi_{X(t_0)} = \varphi_{Q_0}$  and  $\varphi_{X_{t_1,\ldots,t_n}}(z_1,\ldots,z_n) = \varphi_{X_{t_0,\ldots,t_n}}(0,z_1,\ldots,z_n)$  holds for all  $z_i \in \mathbb{R}$ . Now we prove the existence of such a process X.

For that we construct the family of characteristic functions

$$\{\varphi_{t_0}, \varphi_{t_0, t_1, \dots, t_n}, \varphi_{t_1, \dots, t_n}, \quad 0 = t_0 < t_1 < \dots < t_n < \infty, \ n \in \mathbb{N}\}$$

from  $\varphi_{Q_0}$  and  $\{\varphi_{s,t}, 0 \leq s < t\}$  as above, thus

$$\varphi_{t_0} = \varphi_{Q_0}, \ \varphi_{t_1,\dots,t_n}(z_1,\dots,z_n) = \varphi_{t_0,t_1,\dots,t_n}(0,z_1,\dots,z_n), \ z_i \in \mathbb{R},$$
$$\varphi_{t_0,\dots,t_n}(z) = \varphi_{t_0}(z_0+\dots+z_n)\varphi_{t_0,t_1}(z_1+\dots+z_n)\dots\varphi_{t_{n-1},t_n}(z_n).$$

Now we have to check whether the corresponding probability measures of these characteristic functions fulfill the conditions of Theorem 1.1.2. We will do that in equivalent form since by Exercise 1.8.1 the conditions of symmetry and consistency in Theorem 1.1.2 are equivalent to:

- a)  $\varphi_{t_{i_0},\ldots,t_{i_n}}(z_{i_0},\ldots,z_{i_n}) = \varphi_{t_0,\ldots,t_n}(z_0,\ldots,z_n)$  for an arbitrary permutation  $(0,1,\ldots,n) \mapsto (i_0,i_1,\ldots,i_n),$
- b)  $\varphi_{t_0,\dots,t_{m-1},t_{m+1},\dots,t_n}(z_0,\dots,z_{m-1},z_{m+1},\dots,z_n) = \varphi_{t_0,\dots,t_n}(z_0,\dots,0,\dots,z_n)$ , for all  $z_0,\dots,z_n \in \mathbb{R}, m \in \{1,\dots,n\}.$

Condition a) is obvious. Condition b) holds since

$$\varphi_{t_{m-1},t_m}(0+z_{m+1}+\ldots+z_n)\varphi_{t_m,t_{m+1}}(z_{m+1}+\ldots+z_n) \stackrel{\text{by (1.7.1)}}{=} \varphi_{t_{m-1},t_{m+1}}(z_{m+1}+\cdots+z_n)$$

for all  $m \in \{1, \ldots, n\}$ . Thus, the existence of X is proven.

- **Example 1.7.1** 1. If  $T = \mathbb{N}_0 = \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}$ , then  $X = \{X(t), t \in \mathbb{N}_0\}$  has independent increments if and only if  $X(n) \stackrel{d}{=} \sum_{i=0}^n Y_i$ , where  $\{Y_i\}$  are independent random variables and  $Y_n \stackrel{d}{=} X(n) X(n-1), n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Such a process X is called *random walk*. It may also be defined for  $Y_i$  with values in  $\mathbb{R}^m$ .
  - 2. The Poisson process with intensity  $\lambda$  has independent increments.
  - 3. The Wiener process possesses independent increments.

Exercise 1.7.1 Prove that!

#### Exercise 1.7.2

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a process with independent increments and  $g : [0, \infty) \to \mathbb{R}$  an arbitrary (deterministic) function. Show that the process  $Y = \{Y(t), t \ge 0\}$  with  $Y(t) = X(t) + g(t), t \ge 0$ , also possesses independent increments.

# 1.8 Additional exercises

#### Exercise 1.8.1

Prove the following assertion: The family of probability measures  $\mathsf{P}_{t_1,\ldots,t_n}$  on  $(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}^n))$ ,  $n \geq 1, t = (t_1,\ldots,t_n)^\top \in T^n$  fulfills the conditions of the theorem of Kolmogorov if and only if for  $n \geq 2$  and for all  $s = (s_1,\ldots,s_n)^\top \in \mathbb{R}^n$  the following conditions are fulfilled:

a) 
$$\varphi_{\mathsf{P}_{t_1,\dots,t_n}}((s_1,\dots,s_n)^{\top}) = \varphi_{\mathsf{P}_{t_{\pi(1)},\dots,t_{\pi(n)}}}((s_{\pi(1)},\dots,s_{\pi(n)})^{\top})$$
 for all  $\pi \in \mathcal{S}_n$   
b)  $\varphi_{\mathsf{P}_{t_1,\dots,t_{n-1}}}((s_1,\dots,s_{n-1})^{\top}) = \varphi_{\mathsf{P}_{t_1,\dots,t_n}}((s_1,\dots,s_{n-1},0)^{\top}).$ 

Remark:  $\varphi(\cdot)$  denotes the characteristic function of the corresponding measure.  $S_n$  denotes the group of all permutations  $\pi : \{1, \ldots, n\} \to \{1, \ldots, n\}$ .

#### Exercise 1.8.2

Show the existence of a random function whose finite-dimensional distributions are multivariatenormally distributed and explicitly give the measurable spaces  $(E_{t_1,\ldots,t_n}, \mathcal{E}_{t_1,\ldots,t_n})$ .

#### Exercise 1.8.3

Give an example of a family of probability measures  $\mathsf{P}_{t_1,\ldots,t_n}$ , which do not fulfill the conditions of the theorem of Kolmogorov.

#### Exercise 1.8.4

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  and  $Y = \{Y(t), t \in T\}$  be two stochastic processes which are defined on the same complete probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$  and which take values in the measurable space  $(\mathsf{S}, \mathcal{B})$ .

- a) Prove that: X and Y are stochastically equivalent  $\Longrightarrow \mathsf{P}_X = \mathsf{P}_Y$ .
- b) Give an example of two processes X and Y for which holds:  $P_X = P_Y$ , but X and Y are not stochastically equivalent.
- c) Prove that: X and Y are stochastically indistinguishable  $\implies$  X and Y are stochastically equivalent.
- d) Prove in the case of countability of T: X and Y are stochastically equivalent  $\implies X$  and Y are stochastically indistinguishable.
- e) Give in the case of countable T an example of two processes X and Y for which holds: X and Y are stochastically equivalent but not stochastically indistinguishable.

#### Exercise 1.8.5

Let  $W = \{W(t), t \in \mathbb{R}\}$  be a Wiener Process. Which of the following processes are Wiener processes as well?

- a)  $W_1 = \{W_1(t) := \sqrt{t}W(1), t \in \mathbb{R}\},\$
- b)  $W_2 = \{W_2(t) := W(2t) W(t), t \in \mathbb{R}\}.$

#### Exercise 1.8.6

Let a stochastic process  $X = \{X(t), t \in [0, 1]\}$  be given which consists of independent and identically distributed random variables with density  $f(x), x \in \mathbb{R}$ . Show that such a process can not be continuous in  $t \in [0, 1]$ .

# Exercise 1.8.7

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \in [a, b]\}$  be a real-valued stochastic process in Theorem 1.3.1 (*criterion of Kolmogorov*). Show that:

- a) If you fix the variable  $\delta = 0$  in condition (1.3.1), then in general the condition is not sufficient for the existence of a continuous modification. *Hint: Consider the Poisson process.*
- b) The Wiener process  $W = \{W(t), t \in [0, \infty)\}$  possesses a continuous modification. *Hint:* Consider the case  $\alpha = 4$ .

#### Exercise 1.8.8

Give an example of a stochastic process  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  whose paths are simultaneously  $L^2$ -differentiable but not almost surely differentiable.

#### Exercise 1.8.9

Give an example of a stochastic process  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  whose paths are simultaneously almost surely differentiable but not  $L^1$ -differentiable,.

#### Exercise 1.8.10

Prove that a (real-valued) stochastic process  $X = \{X(t), t \in [0, \infty)\}$  with independent increments already has stationary increments if the distribution of the random variable X(t+h) - X(h) is independent of h.

# 2 Counting processes

In this chapter we consider several examples of stochastic processes which model the counting of events and thus possess piecewise constant paths.

Let  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$  be a probability space and  $\{S_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  a non-decreasing sequence of a.s. non-negative random variables, i.e.  $0 \leq S_1 \leq S_2 \leq \ldots \leq S_n \leq \ldots$ 

#### Definition 2.0.1

The stochastic process  $N = \{N(t), t \ge 0\}$  is called *counting process* if

$$N(t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbb{1}(S_n \le t),$$

where 1(A) is the indicator function of the event  $A \in \mathcal{A}$ .

N(t) counts the events which occur at  $S_n$  until time t.  $S_n$  e.g. may be the time of occurrence of

- 1. the n-th elementary particle in the Geiger counter, or
- 2. a damage claim in the non-life insurance, or
- 3. a data package at a server within a computer network, etc.

A special case of the counting processes are the so-called *renewal processes*.

# 2.1 Renewal processes

#### Definition 2.1.1

Let  $\{T_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  be a sequence of i.i.d. non-negative random variables with  $\mathsf{P}(T_1 > 0) > 0$ . A counting process  $N = \{N(t), t \ge 0\}$  with N(0) = 0 a.s.,  $S_n = \sum_{k=1}^n T_k, n \in \mathbb{N}$ , is called *renewal process*. Thereby  $S_n$  is called the *time of the n-th renewal*,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

The name "renewal process" is given by the following interpretation. The "interarrival times"  $T_n$  are interpreted as the lifetime of a technical spare part or mechanism within a system, thus  $S_n$  is the time of the n-th break down of the system. The defective part is immediately replaced by a new part (comparable with the exchange of a light bulb). Thus, N(t) is the number of repairs (the so-called "renewals") of the system until time t.

**Remark 2.1.1** 1. It is  $N(t) = \infty$  if  $S_n \leq t$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

- 2. Often it is assumed that only  $T_2, T_3, \ldots$  are identically distributed with  $\mathsf{E}T_n < \infty$ . The distribution of  $T_1$  is freely selectable. Such a process  $N = \{N(t), t \ge 0\}$  is called *delayed* renewal process (with delay  $T_1$ ).
- 3. Sometimes the requirement  $T_n \ge 0$  is omitted.



Fig. 2.1: Construction and trajectories of a random process

- 4. It is clear that  $\{S_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}_0}$  with  $S_0=0$  a.s.,  $S_n=\sum_{k=1}^n T_k, n\in\mathbb{N}$  is a random walk.
- 5. If one requires that the *n*-th exchange of a defective part in the system takes a time  $T'_n$ , then by  $T_n = T_n + T'_n$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  a different renewal process is given. Its stochastic properties do not differ from the process which is given in Definition 2.1.1.

In the following we assume that  $\mu = \mathsf{E}T_n \in (0, \infty), n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

#### Theorem 2.1.1 (Individual ergodic theorem):

Let  $N = \{N(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a renewal process. Then it holds that:

$$\lim_{t \to \infty} \frac{N(t)}{t} = \frac{1}{\mu} \quad \text{a.s}$$

**Proof** For all  $t \ge 0$  and  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  it holds that  $\{N(t) = n\} = \{S_n \le t < S_{n+1}\}$ , therefore  $S_{N(t)} \le t < S_{N(t)+1}$  and

$$\frac{S_{N(t)}}{N(t)} \le \frac{t}{N(t)} \le \frac{S_{N(t)+1}}{N(t)+1} \cdot \frac{N(t)+1}{N(t)}.$$

If we can show that  $\frac{S_{N(t)}}{N(t)} \xrightarrow[t \to \infty]{a.s.} \mu$  and  $N(t) \xrightarrow[t \to \infty]{a.s.} \infty$ , then  $\frac{t}{N(t)} \xrightarrow[t \to \infty]{a.s.} \mu$  holds and therefore the assertion of the theorem.

According to the strong law of large numbers of Kolmogorov (cf. lecture notes "Wahrschein-lichkeitsrechnung" (WR), Theorem 7.1.4) it holds that  $\frac{S_n}{n} \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{a.s.} \mu$ , thus  $S_n \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{a.s.} \infty$  and there-fore  $\mathsf{P}(N(t) < \infty) = 1$  since  $\mathsf{P}(N(t) = \infty) = \mathsf{P}(S_n \le t, \forall n) = 1 - \underbrace{\mathsf{P}(\exists n : \forall m \in \mathbb{N}_0 \ S_{n+m} > t)}_{n \to \infty} =$ =1, if  $S_n \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{a.s} \infty$ 

1-1=0. Then  $N(t), t \ge 0$ , is a real random variable. We show that  $N(t) \xrightarrow[t \to \infty]{a.s.} \infty$ . All trajectories of N(t) are monotonously non-decreasing in

 $t \geq 0$ , thus  $\exists \lim_{t \to \infty} N(\omega, t)$  for all  $\omega \in \Omega$ . Moreover it holds that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{P}(\lim_{t \to \infty} N(t) < \infty) &= \lim_{n \to \infty} \mathsf{P}(\lim_{t \to \infty} N(t) < n) \stackrel{(*)}{=} \lim_{n \to \infty} \lim_{t \to \infty} \mathsf{P}(N(t) < n) \\ &= \lim_{n \to \infty} \lim_{t \to \infty} \mathsf{P}(S_n > t) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \lim_{t \to \infty} \mathsf{P}(\sum_{k=1}^n T_k > t) \\ &\leq \lim_{n \to \infty} \lim_{t \to \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n \underbrace{\mathsf{P}(T_k > \frac{t}{n})}_{\underset{t \to \infty}{\longrightarrow} 0} = 0. \end{aligned}$$

The equality (\*) holds since  $\{\lim_{t\to\infty} N(t) < n\} = \{\exists t_0 \in \mathbb{Q}_+ : \forall t \ge t_0 \ N(t) < n\} = \bigcup_{\substack{t \ge 0 \\ t \ge t_0}} \bigcap_{t \ge t_0} \{N(t) < n\} = \liminf_{\substack{t \in \mathbb{Q}_+ \\ t \ge t_0}} \{N(t) < n\} = \liminf_{\substack{t \to \infty \\ t \to \infty}} \{N(t) < n\}, \text{ then the continuity of the probability} measure is used, where <math>\mathbb{Q}_+ = \mathbb{Q} \cap \mathbb{R}_+ = \{q \in \mathbb{Q} : q \ge 0\}$ . Since for every  $\omega \in \Omega$  it holds that  $\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{S_n}{n} = \lim_{t\to\infty} \frac{S_{N(t)}}{N(t)}$  (a realization of  $N(\cdot)$  is a subsequence of  $\mathbb{N}$ ), it holds that  $\lim_{t\to\infty} \frac{S_{N(t)}}{N(t)} \stackrel{a.s}{=} \mu.$ 

#### **Remark 2.1.2**

One can generalize the ergodic theorem to the case of non-identically distributed  $T_n$ . Thereby we require that  $\mu_n = \mathsf{E}T_n$ ,  $\{T_n - \mu_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  are uniformly integrable and  $\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^n \mu_k \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} \mu > 0$ . Then we can prove that  $\frac{N(t)}{t} \xrightarrow[t \to \infty]{} \frac{\mathsf{P}}{\mu}$  (cf. [2], page 276).

Theorem 2.1.2 (Central limit theorem): If  $\mu \in (0, \infty)$ ,  $\sigma^2 = \text{Var } T_1 \in (0, \infty)$ , it holds that

$$\mu^{\frac{3}{2}} \cdot \frac{N(t) - \frac{t}{\mu}}{\sigma \sqrt{t}} \xrightarrow[t \to \infty]{d} Y,$$

where  $Y \sim \mathcal{N}(0, 1)$ .

**Proof** According to the central limit theorem for sums of i.i.d. random variables (cf. Theorem 7.2.1, WR) it holds that

$$\frac{S_n - n\mu}{\sqrt{n\sigma^2}} \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{d} Y.$$
(2.1.1)

Let [x] be the integer part of  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ . It holds for  $a = \frac{\sigma^2}{\mu^3}$  that

$$\mathsf{P}\left(\frac{N(t) - \frac{t}{\mu}}{\sqrt{at}} \le x\right) = \mathsf{P}\left(N(t) \le x\sqrt{at} + \frac{t}{\mu}\right) = \mathsf{P}\left(S_{m(t)} > t\right),$$

where  $m(t) = \left[x\sqrt{at} + \frac{t}{\mu}\right] + 1, t \ge 0$ , and  $\lim_{t\to\infty} m(t) = \infty$ . Therefore we get that

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \mathsf{P}\left(\frac{N(t) - \frac{t}{\mu}}{\sqrt{at}} \le x\right) - \varphi(x) \right| &= \left| \mathsf{P}\left(S_{m(t)} > t\right) - \varphi(x) \right| \\ &= \left| \mathsf{P}\left(\frac{S_{m(t)} - \mu m(t)}{\sigma \sqrt{m(t)}} > \frac{t - \mu m(t)}{\sigma \sqrt{m(t)}}\right) - \varphi(x) \right| := I_t(x) \end{aligned}$$

#### 2 Counting processes

for arbitrary  $t \ge 0$  and  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ , where  $\varphi$  is the distribution function of the  $\mathcal{N}(0, 1)$ -distribution. For fixed  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  we introduce  $Z_t = -\frac{t-\mu m(t)}{\sigma \sqrt{m(t)}} - x$ ,  $t \ge 0$ . Then it holds that

$$I_t(x) = \left| \mathsf{P}\left( \frac{S_{m(t)} - \mu m(t)}{\sigma \sqrt{m(t)}} + Z_t > -x \right) - \varphi(x) \right|.$$

If we can prove that  $Z_t \xrightarrow[t \to \infty]{t \to \infty} 0$ , then applying (2.1.1) and the theorem of Slutsky (Theorem 6.4.1, WR) would result in  $\frac{S_{m(t)} - \mu m(t)}{\sigma \sqrt{m(t)}} + Z_t \xrightarrow[t \to \infty]{d} Y \sim \mathcal{N}(0, 1)$  since  $Z_t \xrightarrow[t \to \infty]{t \to \infty} 0$  a.s. results in  $Z_t \xrightarrow[t \to \infty]{d} 0$ . Therefore we could write  $I_t(x) \xrightarrow[t \to \infty]{t \to \infty} |\bar{\varphi}(-x) - \varphi(x)| = |\varphi(x) - \varphi(x)| = 0$ , where  $\bar{\varphi}(x) = 1 - \varphi(x)$  is the tail function of the  $\mathcal{N}(0, 1)$ -distribution, and the property of symmetry of  $\mathcal{N}(0, 1) : \bar{\varphi}(-x) = \varphi(x), x \in \mathbb{R}$  was used.

Now we show that  $Z_t \xrightarrow[t \to \infty]{t \to \infty} 0$ , or  $\frac{t - \mu m(t)}{\sigma \sqrt{m(t)}} \xrightarrow[t \to \infty]{t \to \infty} -x$ . It holds that  $m(t) = x\sqrt{at} + \frac{t}{\mu} + \varepsilon(t)$ , where  $\varepsilon(t) \in [0, 1)$ . Then it holds that

$$\frac{t - \mu m(t)}{\sigma \sqrt{m(t)}} = \frac{t - \mu x \sqrt{at} - t - \mu \varepsilon(t)}{\sigma \sqrt{m(t)}} = -x \frac{\sqrt{at\mu}}{\sigma \sqrt{x\sqrt{at} + \frac{t}{\mu} + \varepsilon(t)}} - \frac{\mu \varepsilon(t)}{\sigma \sqrt{m(t)}}$$
$$= -\frac{x\mu}{\sigma \sqrt{\frac{x}{\sqrt{at}} + \frac{1}{\mu a} + \frac{\varepsilon(t)}{at}}} - \frac{\mu \varepsilon(t)}{\sigma \sqrt{m(t)}}$$
$$= -\frac{x\frac{\mu}{\sigma}}{\sqrt{\frac{\mu^2}{\sigma^2} + \frac{x}{\sqrt{at}} + \frac{\varepsilon(t)}{at}}} - \frac{\mu \varepsilon(t)}{\sigma \sqrt{m(t)}} \xrightarrow[t \to \infty]{t \to \infty} - x.$$

## Remark 2.1.3

In Lindeberg form, the central limit theorem can also be proven for non-identically distributed  $T_n$ , cf. [2, pages 276 - 277].

#### Definition 2.1.2

The function  $H(t) = \mathsf{E}N(t), t \ge 0$  is called *renewal function* of the process N (or of the sequence  $\{S_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ ).

Let  $F_T(x) = \mathsf{P}(T_1 \leq x), x \in \mathbb{R}$  be the distribution function of  $T_1$ . For arbitrary distribution functions  $F, G : \mathbb{R} \to [0, 1]$  the convolution F \* G is defined as  $F * G(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} F(x - y) dG(y)$ . The k-fold convolution  $F^{*k}$  of the distribution F with itself,  $k \in \mathbb{N}_0$ , is defined inductively:

$$F^{*0}(x) = 1(x \in [0, \infty)), \ x \in \mathbb{R},$$
  

$$F^{*1}(x) = F(x), \ x \in \mathbb{R},$$
  

$$F^{*(k+1)}(x) = F^{*k} * F(x), \ x \in \mathbb{R}.$$

#### Lemma 2.1.1

The renewal function H of a renewal process N is monotonously non-decreasing and right-sided continuous on  $\mathbb{R}_+$ . Moreover it holds that

$$H(t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathsf{P}(S_n \le t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} F_T^{*n}(t), \ t \ge 0.$$
(2.1.2)

**Proof** The monotonicity and right-sided continuity of H are consequences from the almost surely monotonicity and right-sided continuity of the trajectories of N. Now we prove (2.1.2):

$$H(t) = \mathsf{E}N(t) = \mathsf{E}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbb{1}(S_n \le t) \stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathsf{E}\mathbb{1}(S_n \le t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathsf{P}(S_n \le t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} F_T^{*n}(t),$$

since  $\mathsf{P}(S_n \leq t) = \mathsf{P}(T_1 + \ldots + T_n \leq t) = F_T^{*n}(t), t \geq 0$ . The equality (\*) holds for all partial sums on both sides, therefore in the limit as well.

Except for few cases it is impossible to calculate the renewal function H by the formula (2.1.2) analytically. Therefore the *Laplace transform* of H is often used in calculations. For a monotone (e.g. monotonously non-decreasing) right-sided continuous function  $G : [0, \infty) \to \mathbb{R}$  the *Laplace transform* is defined as  $\hat{l}_G(s) = \int_0^\infty e^{-sx} dG(x)$ ,  $s \ge 0$ . Here the integral is to be understood as the Lebesgue-Stieltjes integral, thus as a Lebesgue integral with respect to the measure  $\mu_G$  on  $\mathcal{B}_{\mathbb{R}_+}$  defined by  $\mu_G((x, y]) = G(y) - G(x)$ ,  $0 \le x < y < \infty$ , if G is monotonously non-decreasing.

Just to remind you: the Laplace transform  $\hat{l}_X$  of a random variable  $X \ge 0$  is defined by  $\hat{l}_X(s) = \int_0^\infty e^{-sx} dF_X(x), s \ge 0.$ 

#### Lemma 2.1.2

For s > 0 it holds that:

$$\hat{l}_H(s) = \frac{l_{T_1}(s)}{1 - \hat{l}_{T_1}(s)}.$$

**Proof** It holds that:

$$\hat{l}_{H}(s) = \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-sx} dH(x) \stackrel{(2.1.2)}{=} \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-sx} d\left(\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} F_{T}^{*n}(x)\right) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-sx} dF_{T}^{*n}(x)$$
$$= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \hat{l}_{T_{1}+\dots+T_{n}}(s) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\hat{l}_{T_{1}}(s)\right)^{n} = \frac{\hat{l}_{T_{1}}(s)}{1 - \hat{l}_{T_{1}}(s)},$$

where for s > 0 it holds that  $\hat{l}_{T_1}(s) < 1$  and thus the geometric series  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \hat{l}_{T_1}(s) \right)^n$  converges. Indeed, if  $\hat{l}_{T_1}(s) = 1$  for some s > 0 then  $0 = \int_0^\infty (1 - e^{-sx}) dF_T(x) = \mathsf{E}(1 - e^{-sT_1})$  because of  $\mathsf{P}(T_1 \ge 0) = 1$ . Since  $1 - e^{-sT_1} \ge 0$  a.s. we have  $1 - e^{-sT_1} = 0$  a.s. and so  $T_1 = 0$  a.s. which contradicts our assumption  $\mathsf{P}(T_1 > 0) > 0$ .

#### Remark 2.1.4

If  $N = \{N(t), t \ge 0\}$  is a delayed renewal process (with delay  $T_1$ ), the statements of Lemmas 2.1.1 - 2.1.2 hold in the following form:

1.

$$H(t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (F_{T_1} * F_{T_2}^{*n})(t), \ t \ge 0,$$

where  $F_{T_1}$  and  $F_{T_2}$ , respectively are the distribution functions of  $T_1$  and  $T_n$ ,  $n \ge 2$ , respectively.

2.

$$\hat{l}_H(s) = \frac{\hat{l}_{T_1}(s)}{1 - \hat{l}_{T_2}(s)}, \ s \ge 0,$$
(2.1.3)

where  $\hat{l}_{T_1}$  and  $\hat{l}_{T_2}$  are the Laplace transforms of the distribution of  $T_1$  and  $T_n$ ,  $n \ge 2$ .

#### 2 Counting processes

For further observations we need a theorem (of Wald) about the expected value of a sum (with random number) of independent random variables.

#### Definition 2.1.3

Let  $\nu$  be a  $\mathbb{N}$ -valued random variable and be  $\{X_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  a sequence of random variables defined on the same probability space.  $\nu$  is called *independent of the future*, if for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  the event  $\{\nu \leq n\}$  does not depend on the  $\sigma$ -algebra  $\sigma(\{X_k, k > n\})$ .

#### Theorem 2.1.3 (Wald's identity):

Let  $\{X_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  be a sequence of random variables with  $\sup \mathsf{E}|X_n| < \infty$ ,  $\mathsf{E}X_n = a, n \in \mathbb{N}$ , and let  $\nu$  be a N-valued random variable which is independent of the future, with  $\mathsf{E}\nu < \infty$ . Then it holds that

$$\mathsf{E}(\sum_{n=1}^{\nu} X_n) = a \cdot \mathsf{E}\nu.$$

**Proof** Introduce the notation  $S_n = \sum_{k=1}^n X_k$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Since  $\mathsf{E}\nu = \sum_{n=1}^\infty \mathsf{P}(\nu \ge n)$ , the theorem follows from Lemma 2.1.3.

# Lemma 2.1.3 (Kolmogorov-Prokhorov):

Let  $\nu$  be a N-valued random variable which is independent of the future and it holds that

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathsf{P}(\nu \ge n) \mathsf{E}|X_n| < \infty.$$
(2.1.4)

Then  $\mathsf{E}S_{\nu} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathsf{P}(\nu \ge n) \mathsf{E}X_n$  holds. If  $X_n \ge 0$  a.s., then condition (2.1.4) is not required.

**Proof** It holds that  $S_{\nu} = \sum_{n=1}^{\nu} X_n = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} X_n 1(\nu \ge n)$ . We introduce the notation  $S_{\nu,n} = \sum_{k=1}^{n} X_k 1(\nu \ge k), n \in \mathbb{N}$ . First, we prove the lemma for  $X_n \ge 0$  a.s.,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . It holds  $S_{\nu,n} \uparrow S_{\nu}$ ,  $n \to \infty$  for every  $\omega \in \Omega$ , and thus according to the monotone convergence theorem it holds that:  $\mathsf{E}S_{\nu} = \lim_{n\to\infty} \mathsf{E}S_{\nu,n} = \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \mathsf{E}(X_k 1(\nu \ge k))$ . Since  $\{\nu \ge k\} = \{\nu \le k - 1\}^c$  does not depend on  $\sigma(X_k) \subset \sigma(\{X_n, n \ge k\})$  it holds that  $\mathsf{E}(X_k 1(\nu \ge k)) = \mathsf{E}X_k \mathsf{P}(\nu \ge k), k \in \mathbb{N}$ , and thus  $\mathsf{E}S_{\nu} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathsf{P}(\nu \ge n)\mathsf{E}X_n$ .

Now, let  $X_n$  be arbitrary. Take  $Y_n = |X_n|$ ,  $Z_n = \sum_{k=1}^n Y_k$ ,  $Z_{\nu,n} = \sum_{k=1}^n Y_k \mathbf{1}(\nu \ge k)$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Since  $Y_n \ge 0$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , it holds that  $\mathsf{E}Z_{\nu} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathsf{E}(|X_n|)\mathsf{P}(\nu \ge n) < \infty$  from (2.1.4). Since  $|S_{\nu,n}| \le Z_{\nu,n} \le Z_{\nu}$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , according to the dominated convergence theorem of Lebesgue it holds that  $\mathsf{E}S_{\nu} = \lim_{n \to \infty} \mathsf{E}S_{\nu,n} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathsf{E}X_n\mathsf{P}(\nu \ge n)$ , where this series converges absolutely.  $\Box$ 

**Corollary 2.1.1** 1. For an arbitrary Borel measurable function  $g : \mathbb{R}_+ \to \mathbb{R}_+$  and the renewal process  $N = \{N(t), t \ge 0\}$  with interarrival times  $\{T_n\}, T_n$  i.i.d.,  $\mu = \mathsf{E}T_n \in (0, \infty)$  it holds that

$$\mathsf{E}\left(\sum_{k=1}^{N(t)+1} g(T_n)\right) = (1+H(t))\mathsf{E}g(T_1), \ t \ge 0.$$

2.  $H(t) < \infty, t \ge 0.$ 

**Proof** 1. For every  $t \ge 0$  it is obvious that  $\nu = 1 + N(t)$  does not depend on the future of  $\{T_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ , the rest follows from Theorem 2.1.3 with  $X_n = g(T_n), n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

2. For s > 0 consider  $T_n^{(s)} = \min\{T_n, s\}$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Choose s > 0 such that for freely selected (but fixed) small  $\varepsilon > 0$ :  $\mu^{(s)} = \mathbb{E}T_1^{(s)} \ge \mu - \varepsilon > 0$ . Let  $N^{(s)}$  be the renewal process which is based on the sequence  $\{T_n^{(s)}\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  of interarrival times:  $N^{(s)}(t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbb{1}(S_n^{(s)} \le t), t \ge 0$ , where  $S_n^{(s)} = T_1^{(s)} + \ldots + T_n^{(s)}, n \in \mathbb{N}$ . It holds  $N(t) \le N^{(s)}(t), t \ge 0$ , a.s., according to Corollary 2.1.1 1):

$$(\mu - \varepsilon)(\mathsf{E}N^{(s)}(t) + 1) \le \mu^{(s)}(\mathsf{E}N^{(s)}(t) + 1) = \mathsf{E}S^{(s)}_{N^{(s)}(t) + 1} = \mathsf{E}(\underbrace{S^{(s)}_{N^{(s)}(t)}}_{\le t} + \underbrace{T^{(s)}_{N^{(s)}(t) + 1}}_{\le s}) \le t + s,$$

 $t \ge 0$ . Thus  $H(t) = \mathsf{E}N(t) \le \mathsf{E}N^{(s)}(t) \le \frac{t+s}{\mu-\varepsilon}, t \ge 0$ . Since  $\varepsilon > 0$  is arbitrary, it holds that  $\limsup_{t\to\infty} \frac{H(t)}{t} \le \frac{1}{\mu}$ , and also our assertion  $H(t) < \infty, t \ge 0$ .

#### Corollary 2.1.2 (Elementary renewal theorem):

For a renewal process N as defined in Corollary 2.1.1, 1) it holds:

$$\lim_{t \to \infty} \frac{H(t)}{t} = \frac{1}{\mu}.$$

**Proof** In Corollary 2.1.1, part 2) we already proved that  $\limsup_{t\to\infty} \frac{H(t)}{t} \leq \frac{1}{\mu}$ . If we show  $\liminf_{t\to\infty} \frac{H(t)}{t} \geq \frac{1}{\mu}$ , our assertion would be proven. According to Theorem 2.1.1 it holds that  $\frac{N(t)}{t} \xrightarrow{t\to\infty} \frac{1}{\mu}$  a.s., therefore according to Fatou's lemma

$$\frac{1}{\mu} = \mathsf{E} \liminf_{t \to \infty} \frac{N(t)}{t} \le \liminf_{t \to \infty} \frac{\mathsf{E}N(t)}{t} = \liminf_{t \to \infty} \frac{H(t)}{t}.$$

#### Remark 2.1.5

1. If  $\mu_2 = \mathsf{E}T_1^2 < \infty$  we can derive a more exact asymptotic for  $H(t), t \to \infty$ :

$$\frac{H(t)}{t} = \frac{1}{\mu} + \frac{\mu_2}{2\mu^2 t} + o(1/t), \ t \to \infty.$$

2. The elementary renewal theorem also holds for delayed renewal processes, where  $\mu = \mathsf{E}T_2$ . We define the *renewal measure* H on  $\mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}_+)$  by  $H(B) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \int_B dF_T^{*n}(x), B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}_+)$ , where  $F_T^{*n}(x) = F_{T_1} * F_{T_2}^{*(n-1)}(x)$ . It holds  $H([0,t]) = H(t), H((s,t]) = H(t) - H(s), s, t \ge 0$ , if H is the renewal function as well as the renewal measure.

#### Theorem 2.1.4 (Fundamental theorem of the renewal theory):

Let  $N = \{N(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a (delayed) renewal process associated with the sequence  $\{T_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ , where  $T_n, n \in \mathbb{N}$  are independent,  $\{T_n, n \ge 2\}$  identically distributed, and the distribution of  $T_2$  is not arithmetic, i.e., not concentrated on a regular lattice with probability 1. The distribution of  $T_1$  is arbitrary. Let  $\mathsf{E}T_2 = \mu \in (0, \infty)$ . Then it holds that

$$\int_0^t g(t-x)dH(x) \xrightarrow[t \to \infty]{} \frac{1}{\mu} \int_0^\infty g(x)dx,$$

where  $g: \mathbb{R}_+ \to \mathbb{R}$  is Riemann integrable on [0, n] for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , and  $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \max_{\substack{n \le x \le n+1}} |g(x)| < \infty$ .

#### 2 Counting processes

Without proof.

In particular  $H((t - u, t]) \xrightarrow[t \to \infty]{} \frac{u}{\mu}$  holds for an arbitrary  $u \in \mathbb{R}_+$ , thus H asymptotically (for  $t \to \infty$ ) behaves as the Lebesgue measure.



Fig. 2.2: Excess of N

#### Definition 2.1.4

The random variable  $\chi(t) = S_{N(t)+1} - t$  is called *excess* of N at time  $t \ge 0$ .

Obviously  $\chi(0) = T_1$  holds. We now give an example of a renewal process with stationary increments.

Let  $N = \{N(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a delayed renewal process associated with the sequence of interarrival times  $\{T_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ . Let  $F_{T_1}$  and  $F_{T_2}$  be the distribution functions of the delay  $T_1$  and  $T_n$ ,  $n \ge 2$ . We assume that  $\mu = \mathsf{E}T_2 \in (0, \infty)$ ,  $F_{T_2}(0) = 0$ , thus  $T_2 > 0$  a.s. and

$$F_{T_1}(x) = \frac{1}{\mu} \int_0^x \bar{F}_{T_2}(y) dy, \ x \ge 0.$$
(2.1.5)

In this case  $F_{T_1}$  is called the *integrated tail distribution function* of  $T_2^{-1}$ .

#### Theorem 2.1.5

Under the conditions we mentioned above, N is a process with stationary increments.



Fig. 2.3: Illustration of the proof of Theorem 2.1.5

**Proof** Let  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $0 \leq t_0 < t_1 < \ldots < t_n < \infty$ . Because  $\{T_n, n \in \mathbb{N}\}$  are independent, the common distribution of  $(N(t_1+t) - N(t_0+t), \ldots, N(t_n+t) - N(t_{n-1}+t))^{\top}$  does not depend on t, if the distribution of  $\chi(t)$  does not depend on t, thus  $\chi(t_0+t) \stackrel{d}{=} \chi(t_i+t) \stackrel{d}{=} \chi(0) = T_1$ ,  $t \geq 0$ , see Figure 2.3.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Show that the formula (2.1.5) yields a valid cumulative distribution function.

We show that  $F_{T_1} = F_{\chi(t)}, t \ge 0.$ 

$$\begin{split} F_{\chi(t)}(x) &= \mathsf{P}(\chi(t) \leq x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathsf{P}(S_n \leq t, \ t < S_{n+1} \leq t + x) \\ &= \mathsf{P}(S_0 = 0 \leq t, \ t < S_1 = T_1 \leq t + x) \\ &+ \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathsf{E}(\mathsf{E}(\mathsf{1}(S_n \leq t, \ t < S_n + T_{n+1} \leq t + x) \mid S_n)) \\ &= F_{T_1}(t+x) - F_{T_1}(t) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \int_0^t \mathsf{P}(t-y < T_{n+1} \leq t + x - y) \ dF_{S_n}(y) \\ &= F_{T_1}(t+x) - F_{T_1}(t) + \int_0^t \mathsf{P}(t-y < T_2 \leq t + x - y) \ d(\sum_{\substack{n=1 \\ H(y)}}^{\infty} F_{S_n}(y)). \end{split}$$

If we can prove that  $H(y) = \frac{y}{\mu}, y \ge 0$ , then we would get

$$\begin{split} F_{\chi(t)}(x) &\stackrel{z=t-y}{=} F_{T_1}(t+x) - F_{T_1}(t) + \frac{1}{\mu} \int_t^0 (F_{T_2}(z+x) - 1 + 1 - F_{T_2}(z)) d(-z) \\ &= F_{T_1}(t+x) - F_{T_1}(t) + \frac{1}{\mu} \int_0^t (\bar{F}_{T_2}(z) - \bar{F}_{T_2}(z+x)) dz \\ &= F_{T_1}(t+x) - F_{T_1}(t) + F_{T_1}(t) - \frac{1}{\mu} \int_x^{t+x} \bar{F}_{T_2}(y) dy \\ &= F_{T_1}(t+x) - F_{T_1}(t+x) + F_{T_1}(x) = F_{T_1}(x), \ x \ge 0, \end{split}$$

according to the form (2.1.5) of the distribution of  $T_1$ .

Now we would like to show that  $H(t) = \frac{t}{\mu}$ ,  $t \ge 0$ . For that we use the formula (2.1.5): it holds that

$$\hat{l}_{T_1}(s) = \frac{1}{\mu} \int_0^\infty e^{-st} (1 - F_{T_2}(t)) dt = \frac{1}{\mu} \underbrace{\int_0^\infty e^{-st} dt}_{\frac{1}{s}} - \frac{1}{\mu} \int_0^\infty e^{-st} F_{T_2}(t) dt$$
$$= \frac{1}{\mu s} \left( 1 + \int_0^\infty F_{T_2}(t) de^{-st} \right) = \frac{1}{\mu s} (1 + \underbrace{e^{-st} F_{T_2}(t)}_{-F_{T_2}(0)=0} \Big|_0^\infty - \underbrace{\int_0^\infty e^{-st} dF_{T_2}(t)}_{\hat{l}_{T_2}(s)} \Big|_{1}^\infty$$
$$= \frac{1}{\mu s} (1 - \hat{l}_{T_2}(s)), \ s \ge 0.$$

Using the formula (2.1.3) we get

$$\hat{l}_H(s) = \frac{\hat{l}_{T_1}(s)}{1 - \hat{l}_{T_2}(s)} = \frac{1}{\mu s} = \frac{1}{\mu} \int_0^\infty e^{-st} dt = \hat{l}_{\frac{t}{\mu}}(s), \ s \ge 0.$$

Since the Laplace transform of a function uniquely determines this function, it holds that  $H(t) = \frac{t}{\mu}, t \ge 0.$ 

#### Remark 2.1.6

In the proof of Theorem 2.1.5 we showed that for the renewal process with delay which possesses

#### 2 Counting processes

the distribution (2.1.5),  $H(t) \sim \frac{t}{\mu}$  not only asymptotically for  $t \to \infty$  (as in the elementary renewal theorem) but it holds  $H(t) = \frac{t}{\mu}$  for all  $t \ge 0$ . This means, we get on average  $\frac{1}{\mu}$  renewals per unit time interval. For that reason such a process N is called *homogeneous renewal process*.

One can also prove the following result.

#### Theorem 2.1.6

If  $N = \{N(t), t \ge 0\}$  is a delayed renewal process with arbitrary delay  $T_1$  and non-arithmetic distribution of  $T_n, n \ge 2, \mu = \mathsf{E}T_2 \in (0, \infty)$ , then it holds that

$$\lim_{t \to \infty} F_{\chi(t)}(x) = \frac{1}{\mu} \int_0^x \bar{F}_{T_2}(y) dy, \ x \ge 0.$$

This means, the limiting distribution of excess  $\chi(t)$ ,  $t \to \infty$  is taken as the distribution of  $T_1$  when defining a homogeneous renewal process.

# 2.2 Poisson processes

#### 2.2.1 Poisson processes

In this section we generalize the definition of a homogeneous Poisson process (see Section 1.2, Example 5)

#### Definition 2.2.1

The counting process  $N = \{N(t), t \ge 0\}$  is called *Poisson process* with intensity measure  $\Lambda$  if

- 1. N(0) = 0 a.s.
- 2.  $\Lambda$  is a locally finite measure on  $\mathbb{R}_+$ , i.e., the measure  $\Lambda : \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}_+) \to \mathbb{R}_+$  possesses the property  $\Lambda(B) < \infty$  for every bounded set  $B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}_+)$ .
- 3. N possesses independent increments.
- 4.  $N(t) N(s) \sim \text{Pois}(\Lambda((s, t]))$  for all  $0 \le s < t < \infty$ .

Sometimes the Poisson process  $N = \{N(t), t \ge 0\}$  is defined by the corresponding random Poisson counting measure  $N = \{N(B), B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}_+)\}$  via  $N = N([0, t]), t \ge 0$ , where a counting measure is a locally finite measure with values in  $\mathbb{N}_0$ .

#### Definition 2.2.2

A random counting measure  $N = \{N(B), B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}_+)\}$  is called *Poisson* with locally finite intensity measure  $\Lambda$  if

- 1. For arbitrary  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and for arbitrary pairwise disjoint bounded sets  $B_1, B_2, \ldots, B_n \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}_+)$  the random variables  $N(B_1), N(B_2), \ldots, N(B_n)$  are independent.
- 2.  $N(B) \sim \text{Pois}(\Lambda(B)), B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}_+), B$ -bounded.

It is obvious that properties 3 and 4 of Definition 2.2.1 follow from properties 1 and 2 of Definition 2.2.2. Property 1 of Definition 2.2.1 however is an autonomous assumption. N(B),  $B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}_+)$  is interpreted as the number of points of N within the set B.

## Remark 2.2.1

Similarly to Definition 2.2.2, a Poisson counting measure can also be defined on an arbitrary metric space E equipped with the Borel- $\sigma$ -algebra  $\mathcal{B}(E)$ . Very often  $E = \mathbb{R}^d$ ,  $d \ge 1$  is chosen in applications.

#### Lemma 2.2.1

For every locally finite measure  $\Lambda$  on  $\mathbb{R}_+$  there exists a Poisson process with intensity measure  $\Lambda$ .

**Proof** If such a Poisson process had existed, the characteristic function  $\varphi_{N(t)-N(s)}(\cdot)$  of the increment N(t) - N(s),  $0 \le s < t < \infty$  would have been equal to  $\varphi_{s,t}(z) = \varphi_{\text{Pois}(\Lambda((s,t]))}(z) = e^{\Lambda((s,t])(e^{iz}-1)}$ ,  $z \in \mathbb{R}$  according to property 4 of Definition 2.2.1. We show that the family of characteristic functions  $\{\varphi_{s,t}, 0 \le s < t < \infty\}$  possesses property (1.7.1): for all u such that  $0 \le s < u < t$ ,  $\varphi_{s,u}(z)\varphi_{u,t}(z) = e^{\Lambda((s,u])(e^{iz}-1)}e^{\Lambda((u,t])(e^{iz}-1)} = e^{(\Lambda((s,u])+\Lambda((u,t]))(e^{iz}-1)} = e^{\Lambda((s,t])(e^{iz}-1)} = \varphi_{s,t}(z)$ ,  $z \in \mathbb{R}$  since the measure  $\Lambda$  is additive. Thus, the existence of the Poisson process N follows from Theorem 1.7.1.

#### Remark 2.2.2

The existence of a Poisson counting measure can be proven with the help of the theorem of Kolmogorov, yet in a more general form than in Theorem 1.1.2.

From the properties of the Poisson distribution it follows that  $\mathsf{E}N(B) = \mathsf{Var} N(B) = \Lambda(B)$ ,  $B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}_+)$ . Thus  $\Lambda(B)$  is interpreted as the mean number of points of N within the set B,  $B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}_+)$ .

We get an important special case if  $\Lambda(dx) = \lambda dx$  for  $\lambda \in (0, \infty)$ , i.e.,  $\Lambda$  is proportional to the Lebesgue measure  $\nu_1$  on  $\mathbb{R}_+$ . Then we call  $\lambda = \mathsf{E}N(1)$  the *intensity* of N.

Soon we will prove that in this case N is a homogeneous Poisson process with intensity  $\lambda$ . To remind you: In Section 1.2 the homogeneous Poisson process was defined as a renewal process with i.i.d. interarrival times  $T_N \sim \text{Exp}(\lambda)$ :  $N(t) = \sup\{n \in \mathbb{N} \ S_n \leq t\}, \ S_n = T_1 + \ldots + T_n, n \in \mathbb{N}, t \geq 0.$ 

#### Exercise 2.2.1

Show that the homogeneous Poisson process is a homogeneous renewal process with  $T_1 \stackrel{d}{=} T_2 \sim \text{Exp}(\lambda)$ . Hint: you have to show that for an arbitrary exponential distributed random variable X the integrated tail distribution function of X is equal to  $F_X$ .

#### Theorem 2.2.1

Let  $N = \{N(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a counting process. The following statements are equivalent.

1. N is a homogeneous Poisson process with intensity  $\lambda > 0$ .

2. a)  $N(t) \sim \text{Pois}(\lambda t), t \ge 0$ 

- b) for an arbitrary  $n \in \mathbb{N}, t \geq 0$ , it holds that the random vector  $(S_1, \ldots, S_n)$  under condition  $\{N(t) = n\}$  possesses the same distribution as the order statistics of i.i.d. random variables  $U_i \in \mathcal{U}([0, t]), i = 1, \ldots, n$ .
- 3. a) N has independent increments,
  - b)  $\mathsf{E}N(1) = \lambda$ , and
  - c) property 2b) holds.

#### 2 Counting processes

- 4. a) N has stationary and independent increments, and
  - b)  $\mathsf{P}(N(t) = 0) = 1 \lambda t + o(t), \ \mathsf{P}(N(t) = 1) = \lambda t + o(t), \ t \downarrow 0 \text{ holds.}$
- 5. a) N has stationary and independent increments,
  - b) property 2a) holds.
- **Remark 2.2.3** 1. It is obvious that Definition 2.2.1 with  $\Lambda(dx) = \lambda dx$ ,  $\lambda \in (0, \infty)$  is an equivalent definition of the homogeneous Poisson process according to Lemma 2.2.1 and Theorem 2.2.1.
  - 2. The homogeneous Poisson process was introduced in the beginning of the 20th century by the physicists A. Einstein and M. Smoluchowski to be able to model the counting process of elementary particles in the Geiger counter.
  - 3. From 4b) it follows  $\mathsf{P}(N(t) > 1) = o(t), t \downarrow 0$ .
  - 4. The intensity of N has the following interpretation:  $\lambda = \mathsf{E}N(1) = \frac{1}{\mathsf{E}T_n}$ , thus the mean number of renewals of N within a time interval with length 1.
  - 5. The renewal function of the homogeneous Poisson process is  $H(t) = \lambda t, t \ge 0$ . Thereby  $H(t) = \Lambda([0, t]), t > 0$  holds for the non-homogeneous Poisson process.

**Proof** Structure of the proof:  $(1) \Rightarrow (2) \Rightarrow (3) \Rightarrow (4) \Rightarrow (5) \Rightarrow (1)$   $(1) \Rightarrow (2)$ : From 1) follows  $S_n = \sum_{k=1}^n T_k \sim Erl(n, \lambda)$  since  $T_k \sim Exp(\lambda)$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , thus  $\mathsf{P}(N(t) = 0) = \mathsf{P}(T_1 > t) = e^{-\lambda t}$ ,  $t \ge 0$ , and for  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ 

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{P}(N(t) = n) &= \mathsf{P}(\{N(t) \ge n\} \setminus \{N(t) \ge n+1\}) = \mathsf{P}(N(t) \ge n) - \mathsf{P}(N(t) \ge n+1) \\ &= \mathsf{P}(S_n \le t) - \mathsf{P}(S_{n+1} \le t) = \int_0^t \frac{\lambda^n x^{n-1}}{(n-1)!} e^{-\lambda x} dx - \int_0^t \frac{\lambda^{n+1} x^n}{n!} e^{-\lambda x} dx \\ &= \int_0^t \frac{d}{dx} \left(\frac{(\lambda x)^n}{n!} e^{-\lambda x}\right) dx = \frac{(\lambda t)^n}{n!} e^{-\lambda t}, \ t \ge 0. \end{split}$$

Thus 2a) is proven.

Now let us prove 2b). According to the transformation theorem for random variables (cf. Theorem 3.6.1, WR), it follows from

$$\begin{cases} S_1 = T_1 \\ S_2 = T_1 + T_2 \\ \vdots \\ S_{n+1} = T_1 + \dots + T_{n+1} \end{cases}$$

that the density  $f_{(S_1,\ldots,S_{n+1})}$  of  $(S_1,\ldots,S_{n+1})^{\top}$  can be expressed by the density of  $(T_1,\ldots,T_{n+1})^{\top}$ ,  $T_i \sim \text{Exp}(\lambda)$ , i.i.d.:

$$f_{(S_1,\dots,S_{n+1})}(t_1,\dots,t_{n+1}) = \prod_{k=1}^{n+1} f_{T_k}(t_k - t_{k-1}) = \prod_{k=1}^{n+1} \lambda e^{-\lambda(t_k - t_{k-1})} = \lambda^{n+1} e^{-\lambda t_{n+1}}$$

for arbitrary  $0 \le t_1 \le \ldots \le t_{n+1}, t_0 = 0$ . For all other  $t_1, \ldots, t_{n+1}$  it holds  $f_{(S_1, \ldots, S_{n+1})}(t_1, \ldots, t_{n+1}) = 0$ .

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} & f_{(S_1,\dots,S_n)}(t_1,\dots,t_n|N(t)=n) = f_{(S_1,\dots,S_n)}(t_1,\dots,t_n|S_k \le t, \ k \le n, \ S_{n+1} > t) \\ & = \ \frac{\int_t^\infty f_{(S_1,\dots,S_{n+1})}(t_1,\dots,t_{n+1})dt_{n+1}\mathbb{I}(0 \le t_1 \le t_2 \le \dots \le t_n \le t)}{\int_0^t \int_0^t \int_0^t \dots \int_0^t \int_t^\infty f_{(S_1,\dots,S_{n+1})}(t_1,\dots,t_{n+1})ds_{n+1}ds_n\dots ds_1} \\ & = \ \frac{\int_t^\infty \lambda^{n+1}e^{-\lambda t_{n+1}}dt_{n+1}}{\int_0^t \int_0^t \dots \int_0^t \int_t^\infty \lambda^{n+1}e^{-\lambda s_{n+1}}\mathbb{I}(0 \le s_1 \le s_2 \le \dots \le s_n \le t)ds_{n+1}ds_n\dots ds_1} \\ & \times \mathbb{I}(0 \le t_1 \le t_2 \le \dots \le t_n \le t) \\ & = \ \frac{n!}{t^n}\mathbb{I}(0 \le t_1 \le t_2 \le \dots \le t_n \le t), \end{aligned}$$

since one can show by induction that  $\int_0^t \int_0^t \dots \int_0^t \mathbb{I}(0 \le s_1 \le \dots \le s_n \le t) ds_1 \dots ds_n = \frac{t^n}{n!}$ . This is exactly the density of order statistics of n i.i.d.  $\mathcal{U}([0,t])$ -random variables.

# Exercise 2.2.2

Prove this.

 $2) \Rightarrow 3)$ 

From 2a) obviously follows 3b). Now we just have to prove the independence of the increments of N. For an arbitrary  $n \in \mathbb{N}, x_1, \ldots, x_n \in \mathbb{N}, t_0 = 0 < t_1 < \ldots < t_n$  for  $x = x_1 + \ldots + x_n$  it holds that

$$P(\cap_{k=1}^{n} \{N(t_{k}) - N(t_{k-1}) = x_{k}\}) = \underbrace{P(\cap_{k=1}^{n} \{N(t_{k}) - N(t_{k-1}) = x_{k}\} | N(t_{n}) = x)}_{\frac{x!}{x_{1}!...x_{n}!} \prod_{k=1}^{n} \left(\frac{t_{k}-t_{k-1}}{t_{n}}\right)^{x_{k}} \text{ according to 2b)}} \times \underbrace{P(N(t_{n}) = x)}_{e^{-\lambda t_{n}} \frac{(\lambda t_{n})^{x}}{x!} \text{ according to 2a)}}_{e^{-\lambda t_{n}} \frac{(\lambda (t_{k} - t_{k-1}))^{x_{k}}}{x_{k}!} e^{-\lambda (t_{k} - t_{k-1})}, \qquad (2.2.2)$$

where the probability of (2.2.1) belongs to the polynomial distribution with parameters n,  $\left\{\frac{t_k-t_{k-1}}{t_n}\right\}_{k=1}^n$ . The event (2.2.1) means x independent uniformly distributed points on [0, t], are spread over n baskets such that exactly  $x_k$  points fall into the basket of length  $t_k - t_{k-1}$ ,  $k = 1, \ldots, n$ , see Fig. 2.4. Thus 3a) is proven since  $\mathsf{P}(\bigcap_{k=1}^n \{N(t_k) - N(t_{k-1}) = x_k\}) = \prod_{k=1}^n \mathsf{P}(\{N(t_k) - N(t_{k-1}) = x_k\}).$ 

$$3) \Rightarrow 4$$

We prove that N possesses stationary increments. For an arbitrary  $n \in \mathbb{N}_0, x_1, \ldots, x_n \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $t_0 = 0 < t_1 < \ldots < t_n$  and h > 0 we consider  $I(h) = \mathsf{P}(\bigcap_{k=1}^n \{N(t_k + h) - N(t_{k-1} + h) = x_k\})$  and show that I(h) does not depend on  $h \in \mathbb{R}$ . According to the formula (2.2.2) it holds that

$$I(h) = \prod_{k=1}^{n} \frac{(\lambda(t_k + h - t_{k-1} - h))^{x_k}}{x_k!} e^{-\lambda(t_k + h - t_{k-1} - h)} = I(0)$$



Fig. 2.4: Proof of Theorem 2.2.1, case  $2) \Rightarrow 3$ ).

for all h > 0. We now show property 4b) for  $h \in (0, 1)$ :

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{P}(N(h) = 0) &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \mathsf{P}(N(h) = 0, N(1) = k) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \mathsf{P}(N(h) = 0, N(1) - N(h) = k) \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \mathsf{P}(N(1) - N(h) = k, N(1) = k) \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \mathsf{P}(N(1) = k) \mathsf{P}(N(1) - N(h) = k \mid N(1) = k) \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \mathsf{P}(N(1) = k)(1 - h)^k. \end{split}$$

We have to show that  $\mathsf{P}(N(h) = 0) = 1 - \lambda h + o(h)$ , i.e.,  $\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{1}{h}(1 - \mathsf{P}(N(h) = 0)) = \lambda$ . Indeed it holds that

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{h} \left(1 - \mathsf{P}(N(h) = 0)\right) &= \frac{1}{h} \left(1 - \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \mathsf{P}(N(1) = k)(1-h)^k\right) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \mathsf{P}(N(1) = k) \cdot \frac{1 - (1-h)^k}{h} \\ \xrightarrow[h \to 0]{} \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \mathsf{P}(N(1) = k) \underbrace{\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{1 - (1-h)^k}{h}}_{k} \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \mathsf{P}(N(1) = k)k = \mathsf{E}N(1) = \lambda, \end{aligned}$$

since the series uniformly converges in h because it is dominated by  $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \mathsf{P}(N(1) = k)k = \lambda < \infty$  due to the inequality  $(1-h)^k \ge 1-kh$ ,  $h \in (0,1)$ ,  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ . Similarly one can show that  $\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{\mathsf{P}(N(h)=1)}{h} = \lim_{h\to 0} \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \mathsf{P}(N(1) = k)k(1-h)^{k-1} = \lambda$ .  $\mathsf{P}(N(h) = 1) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \mathsf{P}(N(1) = k)\mathsf{P}(N(1) - N(h) = k - 1|N(1) = k) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \mathsf{P}(N(1) = k)kh(1-h)^{k-1}$ .  $4) \Rightarrow 5)$  We have to show that for an arbitrary  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $t \ge 0$ 

$$p_n(t) = \mathsf{P}(N(t) = n) = e^{-\lambda t} \frac{(\lambda t)^n}{n!}$$
 (2.2.3)

holds. We will prove that by induction with respect to n. First we show that  $p_0(t) = e^{-\lambda t}$ ,
2 Counting processes

n = 0. For that we consider

$$p_0(t+h) = \mathsf{P}(N(t+h) = 0) = \mathsf{P}(N(t) = 0, N(t+h) - N(t) = 0)$$
  
=  $p_0(t)p_0(h) = p_0(t)(1 - \lambda h + o(h)), \quad h \to +0.$ 

Similarly one can show that

$$p_0(t) = p_0(t-h)(1-\lambda h + o(h)), \quad h \to +0.$$

Thus  $p'_0(t) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{p_0(t+h) - p_0(t)}{h} = -\lambda p_0(t), t > 0$  holds. Since  $p_0(0) = \mathsf{P}(N(0) = 0) = 1$ , it follows from

$$\begin{cases} p'_0(t) &= -\lambda p_0(t) \\ p_0(0) &= 1, \end{cases}$$

that it exists an unique solution  $p_0(t) = e^{-\lambda t}$ ,  $t \ge 0$ . Now let the formula (2.2.3) be proved for n. Prove it for n + 1.

$$p_{n+1}(t+h) = \mathsf{P}(N(t+h) = n+1)$$

$$= \mathsf{P}(N(t) = n, N(t+h) - N(t) = 1) + \mathsf{P}(N(t) = n+1, N(t+h) - N(t) = 0)$$

$$+ \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \mathsf{P}(N(t) = k, N(t+h) - N(t) = n+1-k)$$

$$= p_n(t) \cdot p_1(h) + p_{n+1}(t) \cdot p_0(h) + o(h) \quad (\text{by Remark 2.2.3, 3}))$$

$$= p_n(t)(\lambda h + o(h)) + p_{n+1}(t)(1 - \lambda h + o(h)) + o(h), \ h \to +0.$$

Thus

$$\begin{cases} p'_{n+1}(t) &= -\lambda p_{n+1}(t) + \lambda p_n(t), \ t > 0\\ p_{n+1}(0) &= 0 \end{cases}$$
(2.2.4)

Since  $p_n(t) = e^{-\lambda t} \frac{(\lambda t)^n}{n!}$ , we obtain  $p_{n+1}(t) = e^{-\lambda t} \frac{(\lambda t)^{n+1}}{(n+1)!}$  as a solution of (2.2.4). (Indeed  $p_{n+1}(t) = C(t)e^{-\lambda t} \Rightarrow C'(t)e^{-\lambda t} = \lambda C(t)e^{-\lambda t} - \lambda C(t)e^{-\lambda t} + \lambda p_n(t), C'(t) = \frac{\lambda^{n+1}t^n}{n!} \Rightarrow C(t) = \frac{\lambda^{n+1}t^{n+1}}{(n+1)!}, C(0) = 0$  $5) \Rightarrow 1$ )

Let N be a counting process  $N(t) = \max\{n : S_n \leq t\}, t \geq 0$ , which fulfills conditions 5a) and 5b). We show that  $S_n = \sum_{k=1}^n T_k$ , where  $T_k$  i.i.d. with  $T_k \sim \operatorname{Exp}(\lambda), k \in \mathbb{N}$ . Since  $T_k = S_k - S_{k-1}, k \in \mathbb{N}, S_0 = 0$ , we consider for  $b_0 = 0 \leq a_1 < b_1 \leq \ldots \leq a_n < b_n$ 

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathsf{P}(\cap_{k=1}^{n} \{a_{k} < S_{k} \le b_{k}\}) \\ &= \mathsf{P}(\cap_{k=1}^{n-1} \{N(a_{k}) - N(b_{k-1}) = 0, N(b_{k}) - N(a_{k}) = 1\} \\ & \cap \{N(a_{n}) - N(b_{n-1}) = 0, N(b_{n}) - N(a_{n}) \ge 1\}) \end{aligned}$$

$$&= \prod_{k=1}^{n-1} (\underbrace{\mathsf{P}(N(a_{k} - b_{k-1}) = 0)}_{e^{-\lambda(a_{k} - b_{k-1})}} \underbrace{\mathsf{P}(N(b_{k} - a_{k}) = 1))}_{\lambda(b_{k} - a_{k})e^{-\lambda(b_{k} - a_{k})}} \times \\ & \underbrace{\mathsf{P}(N(a_{n} - b_{n-1}) = 0)}_{e^{-\lambda(a_{n} - b_{n-1})}} \underbrace{\mathsf{P}(N(b_{n} - a_{n}) \ge 1)}_{(1 - e^{-\lambda(b_{n} - a_{n})})} \\ &= e^{-\lambda(a_{n} - b_{n-1})} (1 - e^{-\lambda(b_{n} - a_{n})}) \prod_{k=1}^{n-1} \lambda(b_{k} - a_{k})e^{-\lambda(b_{k} - b_{k-1})} \\ &= \lambda^{n-1}(e^{-\lambda a_{n}} - e^{-\lambda b_{n}}) \prod_{k=1}^{n-1} (b_{k} - a_{k}) = \int_{a_{1}}^{b_{1}} \dots \int_{a_{n}}^{b_{n}} \lambda^{n}e^{-\lambda y_{n}} dy_{n} \dots y_{1} \\ \end{aligned}$$

The common density of  $(S_1, \ldots, S_n)^{\top}$  therefore is given by  $\lambda^n e^{-\lambda y_n} \mathbf{1} (0 \le y_1 \le y_2 \le \ldots \le y_n)$ . Then one can show that  $(T_1, \ldots, T_n)^T$  has a density  $\prod_{k=1}^n \lambda e^{-\lambda t_k}$  as in  $1) \Rightarrow 2$ , part 2,b) by density transformation formula.

## 2.2.2 Compound Poisson process

## Definition 2.2.3

Let  $N = \{N(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a homogeneous Poisson process with intensity  $\lambda > 0$ , built by means of the sequence  $\{T_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  of interarrival times. Let  $\{U_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  be a sequence of i.i.d. random variables, independent of  $\{T_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ . Let  $F_U$  be the distribution function of  $U_1$ . For an arbitrary  $t \ge 0$  let  $X(t) = 1(N(t) > 0) \sum_{k=1}^{N(t)} U_k$ . The stochastic process  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  is called compound Poisson process with parameters  $\lambda$ ,  $F_U$ . The distribution of X(t) thereby is called compound Poisson distribution with parameters  $\lambda t$ ,  $F_U$ .

The compound Poisson process X(t),  $t \ge 0$  can be interpreted as the sum of "marks"  $U_n$  of a homogeneous marked Poisson process (N, U) until time t.

In queuing theory X(t) is interpreted as the overall workload of a server until time t if the requests of service occur at times  $S_n = \sum_{k=1}^n T_k$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and represent the amount of work  $U_n$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

In actuarial mathematics X(t),  $t \ge 0$  is the total claim amount in a portfolio until time  $t \ge 0$ with number of claims N(t) and amount of loss  $U_n$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

#### Theorem 2.2.2

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a compound Poisson process with parameters  $\lambda$ ,  $F_U$ . The following properties hold:

- 1. X has independent and stationary increments.
- 2. If  $\hat{m}_U(s) = \mathsf{E}e^{sU_1}$ ,  $s \in \mathbb{R}$ , is the moment generating function of  $U_1$ , such that  $\hat{m}_U(s) < \infty$ ,  $s \in \mathbb{R}$ , then it holds that

$$\hat{m}_{X(t)}(s) = e^{\lambda t (\hat{m}_U(s) - 1)}, \ s \in \mathbb{R}, \ t \ge 0, \quad \mathsf{E}X(t) = \lambda t \mathsf{E}U_1, \ \mathsf{Var}\, X(t) = \lambda t \mathsf{E}U_1^2, \ t \ge 0.$$

**Proof** 1. We have to show that for arbitrary  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $0 \le t_0 < t_1 < \ldots < t_n$  and h

$$\mathsf{P}\left(\sum_{i_1=N(t_0+h)+1}^{N(t_1+h)} U_{i_1} \le x_1, \dots, \sum_{i_n=N(t_{n-1}+h)+1}^{N(t_n+h)} U_{i_n} \le x_n\right) = \prod_{k=1}^n \mathsf{P}\left(\sum_{i_k=N(t_{k-1})+1}^{N(t_k)} U_{i_k} \le x_k\right)$$

for arbitrary  $x_1, \ldots, x_n \in \mathbb{R}$ . Indeed it holds that

$$\mathsf{P}\left(\sum_{i_1=N(t_0+h)+1}^{N(t_1+h)} U_{i_1} \le x_1, \dots, \sum_{i_n=N(t_{n-1}+h)+1}^{N(t_n+h)} U_{i_n} \le x_n\right)$$

$$= \sum_{k_1,\dots,k_n=0}^{\infty} \left(\prod_{j=1}^n F_n^{*k_j}(x_j)\right) \mathsf{P}\left(\cap_{m=1}^n \{N(t_m+h) - N(t_{m-1}+h) = k_m\}\right)$$

$$= \sum_{k_1,\dots,k_n=0}^{\infty} \left(\prod_{j=1}^n F_n^{*k_j}(x_j)\right) \left(\prod_{m=1}^n \mathsf{P}(N(t_m) - N(t_{m-1}) = k_m)\right)$$

2 Counting processes

$$=\prod_{m=1}^{n}\sum_{k_{m}=0}^{\infty}F_{n}^{*k_{m}}(x_{m})\mathsf{P}(N(t_{m})-N(t_{m-1})=k_{m})=\prod_{m=1}^{n}\mathsf{P}\left(\sum_{k_{m}=N(t_{m-1})+1}^{N(t_{m})}U_{k_{m}}\leq x_{m}\right)$$

2. Exercise 2.2.3

## 2.2.3 Cox process

A Cox process is a (in general inhomogeneous) Poisson process with intensity measure  $\Lambda$  which as such is a random measure. This intuitive idea is made formal in the following definition.

#### Definition 2.2.4

Let  $\Lambda = \{\Lambda(B), B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}_+)\}$  be a random a.s. locally finite measure. The random counting measure  $N = \{N(B), B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}_+)\}$  is called *Cox counting measure (or doubly stochastic Poisson measure) with random intensity measure*  $\Lambda$  if for arbitrary  $n \in \mathbb{N}, k_1, \ldots, k_n \in \mathbb{N}_0$ and  $0 \leq a_1 < b_1 \leq a_2 < b_2 \leq \ldots \leq a_n < b_n$  it holds that  $\mathsf{P}(\bigcap_{i=1}^n \{N((a_i, b_i]) = k_i\}) = \mathsf{E}\left(\prod_{i=1}^n e^{-\Lambda((a_i, b_i])} \frac{\Lambda^{k_i}((a_i, b_i])}{k_i!}\right)$ . The process  $\{N(t), t \geq 0\}$  with N(t) = N((0, t]) is called *Cox process* (or *doubly stochastic Poisson process*) with random intensity measure  $\Lambda$ .

- **Example 2.2.1** 1. If the random measure  $\Lambda$  is a.s. absolutely continuous with respect to the Lebesgue measure, i.e.,  $\Lambda(B) = \int_B \lambda(t) dt$ , B bounded,  $B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}_+)$ , where  $\{\lambda(t), t \geq 0\}$  is a stochastic process with a.s. Borel-measurable Lebesgue-integrable trajectories,  $\lambda(t) \geq 0$  a.s. for all  $t \geq 0$ , then  $\{\lambda(t), t \geq 0\}$  is called the *intensity process* of N.
  - 2. In particular, it can be that  $\lambda(t) \equiv Y$  where Y is a non-negative random variable. Then it holds that  $\Lambda(B) = Y\nu_1(B)$ , thus N has a random intensity Y. Such Cox processes are called *mixed Poisson processes*.

A Cox process  $N = \{N(t), t \ge 0\}$  with intensity process  $\{\lambda(t), t \ge 0\}$  can be built explicitly as follows. Let  $\tilde{N} = \{\tilde{N}(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a homogeneous Poisson process with intensity 1, which is independent of  $\{\lambda(t), t \ge 0\}$ . Then  $N \stackrel{d}{=} N_1$ , where the process  $N_1 = \{N_1(t), t \ge 0\}$  is given by  $N_1(t) = \tilde{N}(\int_0^t \lambda(y) dy), t \ge 0$ . The assertion  $N \stackrel{d}{=} N_1$  of course has to be proven. However, we shall assume it without proof. It is also the basis for the simulation of the Cox process N.

## 2.3 Additional exercises

#### Exercise 2.3.1

Prove that a (real-valued) stochastic process  $X = \{X(t), t \in [0, \infty)\}$  with independent increments already has stationary increments if the distribution of the random variable X(t+h) - X(h) does not depend on h.

#### Exercise 2.3.2

Let  $N = \{N(t), t \in [0, \infty)\}$  be a Poisson process with intensity  $\lambda$ . Calculate the probabilities that within the interval [0, s] exactly *i* events occur under the condition that within the interval [0, t] exactly *n* events occur, i.e.  $\mathsf{P}(N(s) = i \mid N(t) = n)$  for  $s < t, i = 0, 1, \ldots, n$ .

## Exercise 2.3.3

Let  $N^{(1)} = \{N^{(1)}(t), t \in [0,\infty)\}$  and  $N^{(2)} = \{N^{(2)}(t), t \in [0,\infty)\}$  be independent Poisson

#### 2 Counting processes

processes with intensities  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$ . In this case the independence indicates that the sequences  $T_1^{(1)}, T_2^{(1)}, \dots$  and  $T_1^{(2)}, T_2^{(2)}, \dots$  are independent. Show that  $N = \{N(t) := N^{(1)}(t) + N^{(2)}(t), t \in [0, \infty)\}$  is a Poisson process with intensity

 $\lambda_1 + \lambda_2.$ 

## Exercise 2.3.4 (Queuing paradox):

Let  $N = \{N(t), t \in [0, \infty)\}$  be a renewal process. Then  $C(t) = t - S_{N(t)}$  is called the *current lifetime* and  $D(t) = \chi(t) + C(t)$  the *lifetime* at time t > 0. Now let  $N = \{N(t), t \in [0, \infty)\}$  be a Poisson process with intensity  $\lambda$ .

- a) Show that the distribution of the current lifetime is given by  $\mathsf{P}(C(t) = t) = e^{-\lambda t}$  and the density is given by  $f_{C(t)|N(t)>0}(s) = \lambda e^{-\lambda s} \mathbf{1}\{s \le t\}.$
- b) Show that  $\mathsf{P}(D(t) \le x) = (1 (1 + \lambda \min\{t, x\})e^{-\lambda x})\mathbf{1}\{x \ge 0\}.$
- c) To determine the mean excess time  $\mathsf{E}\chi(t)$ , one could argue like this: On average t lies in the middle of the surrounding interval of interarrival time  $(S_{N(t)}, S_{N(t)+1})$ , i.e.  $\mathsf{E}\chi(t) = \frac{1}{2}\mathsf{E}(S_{N(t)+1} - S_{N(t)}) = \frac{1}{2}\mathsf{E}T_{N(t)+1} = \frac{1}{2\lambda}$ . Considering the proof of Theorem 2.1.5 and Exercise 2.2.1 this reasoning is false. Where is the mistake in the reasoning?

Exercise 2.3.5 Let  $X = \{X(t) := \sum_{i=1}^{N(t)} U_i, t \ge 0\}$  be a compound Poisson process. Let  $M_{N(t)}(s) = \mathsf{E}s^{N(t)}$ ,  $s \in (0,1)$ , be the generating function of the Poisson processes N(t),  $\hat{l}_U(s) = \mathsf{E} \exp\{-sU\}$  the Laplace Transform of  $U_i$ ,  $i \in \mathbb{N}$ , and  $\hat{l}_{X(t)}(s)$  the Laplace Transform of X(t). Prove that

$$\hat{l}_{X(t)}(s) = M_{N(t)}(\hat{l}_U(s)), \quad s \ge 0.$$

#### Exercise 2.3.6

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \in [0, \infty)\}$  be a compound Poisson process with  $U_i$  i.i.d.,  $U_1 \sim \text{Exp}(\gamma)$ , where the intensity of N(t) is given by  $\lambda$ . Show that for the Laplace transform  $l_{X(t)}(s)$  of X(t) it holds:

$$\hat{l}_{X(t)}(s) = \exp\left\{-\frac{\lambda ts}{\gamma + s}\right\}.$$

### Exercise 2.3.7

Let the stochastic process  $N = \{N(t), t \in [0, \infty)\}$  be a Cox process with intensity function  $\lambda(t) = Z$ , where Z is a discrete random variable which takes values  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$  with probabilities 1/2. Determine the moment generating function as well as the expected value and the variance of N(t).

### Exercise 2.3.8

Let  $N^{(1)} = \{N^{(1)}(t), t \in [0, \infty)\}$  and  $N^{(2)} = \{N^{(2)}(t), t \ge 0\}$  be two independent homogeneous Poisson processes with intensities  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$ . Moreover, let  $X \ge 0$  be an arbitrary non-negative random variable which is independent of  $N^{(1)}$  and  $N^{(2)}$ . Show that the process  $N = \{N(t), t \geq N(t), t \geq 0\}$ 0 with

$$N(t) = \begin{cases} N^{(1)}(t), & t \le X, \\ N^{(1)}(X) + N^{(2)}(t-X), & t > X \end{cases}$$

is a Cox process whose intensity process  $\lambda = \{\lambda(t), t \ge 0\}$  is given by  $\lambda(t) = \begin{cases} \lambda_1, & t \le X, \\ \lambda_2, & t > X. \end{cases}$ 

# **3 Wiener Process**

The correct explanation of the nature of chaotic movement of tiny particles in liquids or gases by the atomic structure of matter was already given by the Roman philosopher Lucretius 60 B.C. in his book "On the nature of things":

"Observe what happens when sunbeams are admitted into a building and shed light on its shadowy places. You will see a multitude of tiny particles mingling in a multitude of ways... their dancing is an actual indication of underlying movements of matter that are hidden from our sight... It originates with the atoms which move of themselves [i.e., spontaneously]. Then those small compound bodies that are least removed from the impetus of the atoms are set in motion by the impact of their invisible blows and in turn cannon against slightly larger bodies. So the movement mounts up from the atoms and gradually emerges to the level of our senses, so that those bodies are in motion that we see in sunbeams, moved by blows that remain invisible."

The botanist Robert Brown observed similar movement on grains suspended in water. He attributed its origins, however, to a special "life force" within the pollen. Due to his contribution, the name "Brownian motion" was coined. The systematic mathematical study began in 20 c. with Louis Bachelier (1900), Marian Smoluchowski and Albert Einstein (1905). Einstein showed that if u(x,t) is due density (number of particles per unit volume) at a spot x and time t, it satisfies the heat equation  $u'_t(x,t) = \frac{1}{2}u''_x(x,t)$ , whose solution is  $u(x,t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi t}} \exp\left(-\frac{x^2}{2t}\right)$ ,  $x \in \mathbb{R}, t > 0$ . It corresponds to the density of N(0,t)-law. Einstein's explanation was confirmed by experiments in 1908 giving an evidence of the atomic structure of nature.

French physicist Perrin considered the paths of the Brownian motion as natural functions which are continuous but not differentiable anywhere, which brought the American mathematician Norbert Wiener (1928) to the idea to consider trajectories of one single Brownian particle, instead of the study of the whole particle ensemble as it was done before. It was Wiener who has put the Brownian motion onto a firm mathematical basis. In particular, he defined it as a random function and proved its existence. Now this process bears his name in recognition of his outstanding work.

## 3.1 Elementary properties

In Example 2) of Section 1.2 we defined the Brownian motion (or Wiener process)  $W = \{W(t), t \ge 0\}$  as a Gaussian process with  $\mathsf{E}W(t) = 0$  and  $\mathsf{cov}(W(s), W(t)) = \min\{s, t\}$ ,  $s, t \ge 0$ . Why does the Brownian motion exist? According to Theorem 1.1.2 there exists a real-valued Gaussian process  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  with mean value  $\mathsf{E}X(t) = \mu(t), t \ge 0$ , and covariance function  $\mathsf{cov}(X(s), X(t)) = C(s, t), s, t \ge 0$  for every function  $\mu : \mathbb{R}_+ \to \mathbb{R}$  and every positive semidefinite function  $C : \mathbb{R}_+ \times \mathbb{R}_+ \to \mathbb{R}$ . We just have to show that  $C(s, t) = \min\{s, t\}, s, t \ge 0$  is positive semidefinite.

Exercise 3.1.1

Prove this!

#### 3 Wiener Process

We now give a new (equivalent) definition.

#### Definition 3.1.1

A stochastic process  $W = \{W(t), t \ge 0\}$  is called *Wiener process* (or *Brownian motion*) if

- 1. W(0) = 0 a.s.
- 2. W possesses independent increments
- 3.  $W(t) W(s) \sim \mathcal{N}(0, t s), \ 0 \le s < t.$

The existence of W according to Definition 3.1.1 follows from Theorem 1.7.1 since  $\varphi_{s,t}(z) = \mathsf{E}e^{iz(W(t)-W(s))} = e^{-\frac{(t-s)z^2}{2}}, z \in \mathbb{R}$ , and  $e^{-\frac{(t-u)z^2}{2}}e^{-\frac{(u-s)z^2}{2}} = e^{-\frac{(t-s)z^2}{2}}$  for  $0 \le s < u < t$ , thus  $\varphi_{s,u}(z)\varphi_{u,t}(z) = \varphi_{s,t}(z), z \in \mathbb{R}$ . From Theorem 1.3.1 the existence of a version with continuous trajectories follows.

### Exercise 3.1.2

Show that Theorem 1.3.1 holds for  $\alpha = 3$ ,  $\delta = \frac{1}{2}$ .

Therefore, it is often assumed that the Wiener process possesses continuous paths (just take its corresponding version).

### Theorem 3.1.1

Both definitions of the Wiener process are equivalent.

**Proof** 1. From definition in Section 1.2 follows Definition 3.1.1.

W(0) = 0 a.s. follows from  $Var(W(0)) = \min\{0, 0\} = 0$ . Now we prove that the increments of W are independent. If  $Y \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu, K)$  is a n-dimensional Gaussian random vector and A a  $(n \times n)$ -matrix, then  $AY \sim \mathcal{N}(A\mu, AKA^{\top})$  holds, this follows from the explicit form of the characteristic function of Y. Now let  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $0 = t_0 \leq t_1 < \ldots < t_n$ ,  $Y = (W(t_0), W(t_1), \ldots, W(t_n))^{\top}$ . For  $Z = (W(t_0), W(t_1) - W(t_0), \ldots, W(t_n) - W(t_{n-1}))^{\top}$  it holds that Z = AY, where

	(	1	0	0			0 \
		-1	1	0			0
A =		0	-1	1	0		0
		0	0	0		-1	1 /

Thus Z is also Gaussian with a covariance matrix which is diagonal. Indeed, it holds  $\operatorname{cov}(W(t_{i+1}) - W(t_i), W(t_{j+1}) - W(t_j)) = \min\{t_{i+1}, t_{j+1}\} - \min\{t_{i+1}, t_j\} - \min\{t_i, t_{j+1}\} + \min\{t_i, t_j\} = 0$  for  $i \neq j$ . Thus the coordinates of Z are uncorrelated, which means independence in case of a multivariate Gaussian distribution. Thus the increments of W are independent. Moreover, for arbitrary  $0 \leq s < t$  it holds that  $W(t) - W(s) \sim \mathcal{N}(0, t-s)$ . The normal distribution follows since Z = AY is Gaussian, obviously it holds that  $\mathsf{E}W(t) - \mathsf{E}W(s) = 0$  and  $\mathsf{Var}(W(t) - W(s)) = \mathsf{Var}(W(t)) - 2\operatorname{cov}(W(s), W(t)) + \operatorname{Var}(W(s)) = t - 2\min\{s, t\} + s = t - s$ .

2. From Definition 3.1.1 the definition in Section 1.2 follows. Since  $W(t) - W(s) \sim \mathcal{N}(0, t-s)$  for  $0 \leq s < t$ , it holds

$$\mathsf{cov}(W(s), W(t)) = \mathsf{E}[W(s)(W(t) - W(s) + W(s))] = \mathsf{E}W(s)\mathsf{E}(W(t) - W(s)) + \mathsf{Var}\,W(s) = s_{s_1} \mathsf{E}W(s) \mathsf{E}(W(t) - W(s)) + \mathsf{Var}\,W(s) = s_{s_1} \mathsf{E}W(s) \mathsf{$$

thus it holds  $\operatorname{cov}(W(s), W(t)) = \min\{s, t\}$ . From  $W(t) - W(s) \sim \mathcal{N}(0, t-s)$  and W(0) = 0 it also follows that  $\mathsf{E}W(t) = 0, t \ge 0$ . The fact that W is a Gaussian process, follows from point 1) of the proof, relation  $Y = A^{-1}Z$ .

#### Definition 3.1.2

The process  $\{W(t), t \ge 0\}, W(t) = (W_1(t), \dots, W_d(t))^{\top}, t \ge 0$ , is called *d*-dimensional Brownian motion if  $W_i = \{W_i(t), t \ge 0\}$  are independent Wiener processes,  $i = 1, \dots, d$ .

The definitions above and Exercise 3.1.2 ensure the existence of a Wiener process with continuous paths. How do we find an explicit way of building these paths? We will show that in the next section.

## 3.2 Explicit construction of the Wiener process

First we construct the Wiener process on the interval [0,1]. The main idea of the construction is to introduce a stochastic process  $X = \{X(t), t \in [0,1]\}$  which is defined on a probability subspace of  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$  with  $X \stackrel{d}{=} W$ , where  $X(t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n(t)Y_n, t \in [0,1], \{Y_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  is a sequence of i.i.d.  $\mathcal{N}(0,1)$ -random variables and  $c_n(t) = \int_0^t H_n(s)ds, t \in [0,1], n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Here,  $\{H_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  is the orthonormal Haar basis in  $L_2([0,1])$  which will be briefly introduced now.

## 3.2.1 Haar and Schauder functions

#### Definition 3.2.1

The functions  $H_n : [0,1] \to \mathbb{R}$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , are called *Haar functions* if  $H_1(t) = 1$ ,  $t \in [0,1]$ ,  $H_2(t) = \mathbf{1}_{[0,\frac{1}{2}]}(t) - \mathbf{1}_{(\frac{1}{2},1]}(t)$ ,  $H_k(t) = 2^{\frac{n}{2}}(\mathbf{1}_{I_{n,k}}(t) - \mathbf{1}_{J_{n,k}}(t))$ ,  $t \in [0,1]$ ,  $2^n < k \le 2^{n+1}$ , where  $I_{n,k} = [a_{n,k}, a_{n,k} + 2^{-n-1}]$ ,  $J_{n,k} = (a_{n,k} + 2^{-n-1}, a_{n,k} + 2^{-n}]$ ,  $a_{n,k} = 2^{-n}(k - 2^n - 1)$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .



Fig. 3.1: Haar functions

### Lemma 3.2.1

The function system  $\{H_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  is an orthonormal basis in  $L^2([0,1])$  with scalar product  $\langle f,g \rangle = \int_0^1 f(t)g(t)dt, f,g \in L^2([0,1]).$ 

**Proof** The orthonormality of the system  $\langle H_k, H_n \rangle = \delta_{kn}, k, n \in \mathbb{N}$  directly follows from Definition 3.2.1. Now we prove the completeness of  $\{H_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ . It is sufficient to show that for

### 3 Wiener Process

arbitrary function  $g \in L^2([0,1])$  with  $\langle g, H_n \rangle = 0$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , it holds g = 0 almost everywhere on [0,1]. In fact, we always can write the indicator function of an interval  $\mathbf{1}_{[a_{n,k},a_{n,k}+2^{-n-1}]}$  as a linear combination of  $H_n$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ :

$$\begin{split} \mathbf{1}_{[0,\frac{1}{2}]} &= \frac{(H_1 + H_2)}{2}, \\ \mathbf{1}_{(\frac{1}{2},1]} &= \frac{(H_1 - H_2)}{2}, \\ \mathbf{1}_{[0,\frac{1}{4}]} &= \frac{(\mathbf{1}_{[0,\frac{1}{2}]} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}H_3)}{2}, \quad n = 1, \quad k = 3 \\ \mathbf{1}_{(\frac{1}{4},\frac{1}{2}]} &= \frac{(\mathbf{1}_{[0,\frac{1}{2}]} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}H_3)}{2}, \quad n = 1, \quad k = 3 \\ &\vdots \\ \mathbf{1}_{(k,k)} \mathbf{1}_{($$

Therefore it holds  $\int_{\frac{k}{2^n}}^{\frac{(k+1)}{2^n}} g(t)dt = 0, n \in \mathbb{N}_0, k = 0, \dots, 2^n - 1$ , and thus  $G(t) = \int_0^t g(s)ds = 0$ for  $t = \frac{k}{2^n}, n \in \mathbb{N}_0, k = 0, \dots, 2^n - 1$ . Since G is continuous on [0, 1], it follows  $G(t) = 0, t \in [0, 1]$ , and thus g(s) = G'(s) = 0 for almost every  $s \in [0, 1]$ .

From Lemma 3.2.1 it follows that two arbitrary functions  $f, g \in L^2([0,1])$  have expansions  $f = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle f, H_n \rangle H_n$  and  $g = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle g, H_n \rangle H_n$  (these series converge in  $L^2([0,1])$ ) and  $\langle f, g \rangle = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle f, H_n \rangle \langle g, H_n \rangle$  (Parseval's identity).

## Definition 3.2.2

 $1_{[a_n]}$ 

The functions  $S_n(t) = \int_0^t H_n(s) ds = \langle \mathbf{1}_{[0,t]}, H_n \rangle, t \in [0,1], n \in \mathbb{N}$  are called *Schauder functions*.



Fig. 3.2: Schauder functions

# Lemma 3.2.2

It holds:

- 1.  $S_n(t) \ge 0, t \in [0, 1], n \in \mathbb{N},$
- 2.  $\sum_{k=1}^{2^n} S_{2^n+k}(t) \leq \frac{1}{2} 2^{-\frac{n}{2}}, t \in [0,1], n \in \mathbb{N},$

3. Let  $\{a_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  be a sequence of real numbers with  $a_n = O(n^{\varepsilon}), \varepsilon < \frac{1}{2}, n \to \infty$ . Then the series  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n S_n(t)$  converges absolutely and uniformly in  $t \in [0, 1]$  and therefore is a continuous function on [0, 1].

#### **Proof** 1. follows directly from Definition 3.2.2.

- 2. follows since functions  $S_{2^n+k}$  for  $k = 1, ..., 2^n$  have disjoint supports and  $S_{2^n+k}(t) \leq S_{2^n+k}(a_{n,k}+2^{-n-1}) = 2^{-\frac{n}{2}-1}, t \in [0,1].$
- 3. It suffices to show that  $R_n = \sup_{t \in [0,1]} \sum_{k>2^n} |a_k| S_k(t) \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} 0$ . For every  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  and c > 0 it holds  $|a_k| \le ck^{\varepsilon}$ . Therefore it holds for all  $t \in [0,1], n \in \mathbb{N}$

$$\sum_{2^n < k \le 2^{n+1}} |a_k| S_k(t) \le c \cdot 2^{(n+1)\varepsilon} \cdot \sum_{2^n < k \le 2^{n+1}} S_k(t) \le c \cdot 2^{(n+1)\varepsilon} \cdot 2^{-\frac{n}{2}-1} \le c \cdot 2^{\varepsilon - n(\frac{1}{2}-\varepsilon)}.$$

Since  $\varepsilon < \frac{1}{2}$ , it holds  $R_m \le c \cdot 2^{\varepsilon} \sum_{n \ge m} 2^{-n(\frac{1}{2} - \varepsilon)} \xrightarrow[m \to \infty]{m \to \infty} 0$ .

## Lemma 3.2.3

Let  $\{Y_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  be a sequence of (not necessarily independent) random variables defined on  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P}), Y_n \sim \mathcal{N}(0, 1), n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Then it holds  $|Y_n| = O((\log n)^{\frac{1}{2}}), n \to \infty$ , a.s.

**Proof** We have to show that for  $c > \sqrt{2}$  and almost all  $\omega \in \Omega$  it exists a  $n_0 = n_0(\omega, c) \in \mathbb{N}$  such that  $|Y_n| \le c(\log n)^{\frac{1}{2}}$  for  $n \ge n_0$ . If  $Y \sim \mathcal{N}(0, 1), x > 0$ , it holds

$$\begin{split} \overline{\Phi}(x) &:= \mathsf{P}(Y > x) \quad = \quad \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_x^\infty e^{-\frac{y^2}{2}} dy = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_x^\infty \left(-\frac{1}{y}\right) d\left(e^{-\frac{y^2}{2}}\right) \\ &= \quad \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \left(\frac{1}{x} e^{-\frac{x^2}{2}} - \int_x^\infty e^{-\frac{y^2}{2}} \frac{1}{y^2} dy\right) \le \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{1}{x} e^{-\frac{x^2}{2}}. \end{split}$$

(We can also show that  $\overline{\Phi}(x) \sim \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{1}{x} e^{-\frac{x^2}{2}}, x \to \infty$ .) Thus for  $c > \sqrt{2}$  it holds

$$\sum_{n\geq 2} \mathsf{P}(|Y_n| > c(\log n)^{\frac{1}{2}}) \le c^{-1} \frac{2}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \sum_{n\geq 2} (\log n)^{-\frac{1}{2}} e^{-\frac{c^2}{2}\log n} = \frac{c^{-1}\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{\pi}} \sum_{n\geq 2} (\log n)^{-\frac{1}{2}} n^{-\frac{c^2}{2}} < \infty.$$

According to the Lemma of Borel-Cantelli (cf. WR, Lemma 2.2.1) it holds  $\mathsf{P}(\bigcap_n \bigcup_{k \ge n} A_k) = 0$ if  $\sum_k \mathsf{P}(A_k) < \infty$  with  $A_k = \{|Y_k| > c \cdot (\log k)^{\frac{1}{2}}\}, k \in \mathbb{N}$ . Thus  $A_k$  occurs in infinite number only with probability 0, which means  $|Y_n| \le c(\log n)^{\frac{1}{2}}$  for  $n \ge n_0$ .

## 3.2.2 Wiener process with a.s. continuous paths

### Lemma 3.2.4

Let  $\{Y_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  be a sequence of independent  $\mathcal{N}(0, 1)$ -distributed random variables. Let  $\{a_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ and  $\{b_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  be sequences of numbers with  $\sum_{k=1}^{2^m} |a_{2^m+k}| \leq 2^{-\frac{m}{2}}, \sum_{k=1}^{2^m} |b_{2^m+k}| \leq 2^{-\frac{m}{2}}, m \in \mathbb{N}$ . Then the limits  $U = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n Y_n$  and  $V = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n Y_n, U \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n^2), V \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n^2)$ exist a.s., where  $\operatorname{cov}(U, V) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n b_n$ . U and V are independent if and only if  $\operatorname{cov}(U, V) = 0$ .

#### 3 Wiener Process

**Proof** Lemma 3.2.2 and 3.2.3 reveal the a.s. existence of the limits U and V (replace  $a_n$  by  $Y_n$  and  $S_n$  by e.g.  $b_n$  in Lemma 3.2.2). From the stability under convolution of the normal distribution it follows for  $U^{(m)} = \sum_{n=1}^{m} a_n Y_n$ ,  $V^{(m)} = \sum_{n=1}^{m} b_n Y_n$ , that  $U^{(m)} \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sum_{n=1}^{m} a_n^2)$ ,  $V^{(m)} \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sum_{n=1}^{m} b_n^2)$ . Since  $U^{(m)} \xrightarrow{d} U$ ,  $V^{(m)} \xrightarrow{d} V$  it follows  $U \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n^2)$ ,  $V \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n^2)$ . Moreover, it holds

$$\operatorname{cov}(U,V) = \mathsf{E}\left(\sum_{n,m=1}^{\infty} a_n b_m Y_n Y_m\right) = \sum_{n,m=1}^{\infty} a_n b_m \underbrace{\mathsf{E}}(Y_n Y_m)_{\delta_{nm}} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n b_n,$$

according to the dominated convergence theorem of Lebesgue, since by Lemma 3.2.3 it holds  $|Y_n| \leq c \underbrace{(\log n)^{\frac{1}{2}}}_{\leq cn^{\varepsilon}, \ \varepsilon < \frac{1}{2}}$ , for  $n \geq \mathbb{N}_0$ , and the dominated series converges according to Lemma 3.2.2:

$$\sum_{n,k=2^m}^{2^{m+1}} a_n b_k Y_n Y_k \stackrel{a.s.}{\leq} \sum_{n,k=2^m}^{2^{m+1}} a_n b_k c^2 n^{\varepsilon} k^{\varepsilon} \le c^2 2^{2\varepsilon(m+1)} \cdot 2^{-\frac{m}{2}} \cdot 2^{-\frac{m}{2}} \le 2c^2 2^{-(1-2\varepsilon)m}, \quad 1-2\varepsilon > 0.$$

For sufficient large *m* it holds  $\sum_{n,k=2^m}^{\infty} a_n b_k Y_n Y_k \leq 2c^2 \sum_{j=m}^{\infty} 2^{-(1-2\varepsilon)j} < \infty$ , and this series converges a.s. Now we show

 $\operatorname{cov}(U, V) = 0 \iff U$  and V are independent.

Independence always results in the uncorrelation of random variables. We prove the other direction. From  $(U^{(m)}, V^{(m)}) \xrightarrow[m \to \infty]{d} (U, V)$  it follows  $\varphi_{(U^{(m)}, V^{(m)})} \xrightarrow[m \to \infty]{d} \varphi_{(U, V)}$ , thus

$$\begin{split} \varphi_{(U^{(m)},V^{(m)})}(s,t) &= \lim_{m \to \infty} \mathsf{E} \exp\{i(t\sum_{k=1}^{m} a_{k}Y_{k} + s\sum_{n=1}^{m} b_{n}Y_{n})\} \\ &= \lim_{m \to \infty} \mathsf{E} \exp\{i\sum_{k=1}^{m} (ta_{k} + sb_{k})Y_{k}\} = \lim_{m \to \infty} \prod_{k=1}^{m} \mathsf{E} \exp\{i(ta_{k} + sb_{k})Y_{k}\} \\ &= \lim_{m \to \infty} \prod_{k=1}^{m} \exp\{-\frac{(ta_{k} + sb_{k})^{2}}{2}\} = \exp\{-\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(ta_{k} + sb_{k})^{2}}{2}\} \\ &= \exp\left\{-\frac{t^{2}}{2}\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_{k}^{2}\right\} \exp\left\{ts\sum_{\substack{k=1\\ \mathsf{cov}(U,V)=0}}^{\infty} a_{k}b_{k}\right\} \exp\left\{-\frac{s^{2}}{2}\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} b_{k}^{2}\right\} = \varphi_{U}(t)\varphi_{V}(s), \end{split}$$

 $s, t \in \mathbb{R}$ . Thus, U and V are independent if cov(U, V) = 0.

#### Remark 3.2.1

Lemma 3.2.4 is a special case of the theory of Gaussian linear random functions indexed by elements of a Hilbert space L. Here we choose  $L = l_2$ , the space of sequences of real numbers  $b = \{b_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$  with the property  $\|b\|_2 := \sqrt{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n^2} < \infty$  eqipped by the scalar product  $\langle a, b \rangle_2 := \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n b_n$ ,  $a, b \in l_2$ . Let  $X = \{X(a), a \in l_2\}$  be defined as  $X(a) = \langle a, Y \rangle_2$  where  $Y = \{Y_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$  is introduced in Lemma 3.2.4. Then it follows easily that  $X(a) \sim N(0, \|a\|_2^2)$  and  $\operatorname{cov}(X(a), X(b)) = \langle a, b \rangle_2$ . It can be checked immediately that X is a Gaussian random function which is called *linear*. Gaussian linear random functions play an important role in the theory of L-valued Gaussian random elements, cf. [10, Chap. I, Sect. 4].

### Theorem 3.2.1

Let  $\{Y_n, n \in \mathbb{N}\}$  be a sequence of i.i.d. random variables that are  $\mathcal{N}(0, 1)$ -distributed, defined on a probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$ . Then there exists a probability subspace  $(\Omega_0, \mathcal{A}_0, \mathsf{P})$  of  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$ and a stochastic process  $X = \{X(t), t \in [0, 1]\}$  on it such that  $X(t, \omega) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} Y_n(\omega)S_n(t),$  $t \in [0, 1], \omega \in \Omega_0$  and  $X \stackrel{d}{=} W$ . Here,  $\{S_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  is the family of Schauder functions.

**Proof** According to Lemma 3.2.2, 2) the coefficients  $S_n(t)$  fulfill the conditions of Lemma 3.2.4 for every  $t \in [0, 1]$ . In addition to that it exists according to Lemma 3.2.3 a subset  $\Omega_0 \subset \Omega$ ,  $\Omega_0 \in \mathcal{A}$  with  $\mathsf{P}(\Omega_0) = 1$ , such that for every  $\omega \in \Omega_0$  the relation  $|Y_n(\omega)| = O(\sqrt{\log n}), n \to \infty$ , holds. Let  $\mathcal{A}_0 = \mathcal{A} \cap \Omega_0$ . We restrict the probability space to  $(\Omega_0, \mathcal{A}_0, \mathsf{P})$ . Then condition  $a_n = Y_n(\omega) = O(n^{\varepsilon}), \varepsilon < \frac{1}{2}$ , is fulfilled since  $\sqrt{\log n} < n^{\varepsilon}$  for sufficient large n, and according to Lemma 3.2.2, 3) the series  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} Y_n(\omega)S_n(t)$  converges absolutely and uniformly in  $t \in [0, 1]$ to the function  $X(\omega, t), \omega \in \Omega_0$ , which is a continuous function in t for every  $\omega \in \Omega_0$ .  $X(\cdot, t)$ is a random variable since in Lemma 3.2.4 the convergence of this series holds almost surely. Moreover it holds  $X(t) \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} S_n^2(t)), t \in [0, 1]$ .

We show that this stochastic process, defined on  $(\Omega_0, \mathcal{A}_0, \mathsf{P})$ , is a Wiener process. For that we check the conditions of Definition 3.1.1. We consider arbitrary times  $0 \le t_1 < t_2, t_3 < t_4 \le 1$  and evaluate

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{cov}(X(t_2) - X(t_1), X(t_4) - X(t_3)) &= \operatorname{cov}(\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} Y_n(S_n(t_2) - S_n(t_1)), \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} Y_n(S_n(t_4) - S_n(t_3))) \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (S_n(t_2) - S_n(t_1))(S_n(t_4) - S_n(t_3)) \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (\langle H_n, \mathbf{1}_{[0,t_2]} \rangle - \langle H_n, \mathbf{1}_{[0,t_1]} \rangle) \times \\ &\quad (\langle H_n, \mathbf{1}_{[0,t_2]} \rangle - \langle H_n, \mathbf{1}_{[0,t_3]} \rangle) \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle H_n, \mathbf{1}_{[0,t_2]} - \mathbf{1}_{[0,t_1]} \rangle \langle H_n, \mathbf{1}_{[0,t_4]} - \mathbf{1}_{[0,t_3]} \rangle \\ &= \langle \mathbf{1}_{[0,t_2]} - \mathbf{1}_{[0,t_1]}, \mathbf{1}_{[0,t_4]} - \mathbf{1}_{[0,t_3]} \rangle \\ &= \langle \mathbf{1}_{[0,t_2]}, \mathbf{1}_{[0,t_3]} \rangle - \langle \mathbf{1}_{[0,t_1]}, \mathbf{1}_{[0,t_4]} \rangle \\ &\quad - \langle \mathbf{1}_{[0,t_2]}, \mathbf{1}_{[0,t_3]} \rangle + \langle \mathbf{1}_{[0,t_1]}, \mathbf{1}_{[0,t_3]} \rangle \\ &= \min\{t_2, t_4\} - \min\{t_1, t_4\} - \min\{t_2, t_3\} + \min\{t_1, t_3\}, \end{aligned}$$

by Parseval inequality and since  $\langle 1_{[0,s]}, 1_{[0,t]} \rangle = \int_0^{\min\{s,t\}} du = \min\{s,t\}, s,t \in [0,1]$ . If  $0 \leq t_1 < t_2 \leq t_3 < t_4 < 1$ , it holds  $\operatorname{cov}(X(t_2) - X(t_1), X(t_4) - X(t_3)) = t_2 - t_1 - t_2 + t_1 = 0$ , thus the increments of X (according to Lemma 3.2.4) are independent. Moreover it holds  $X(0) \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} S_n^2(0)) = \mathcal{N}(0,0)$ , therefore  $X(0) \stackrel{a.s.}{=} 0$ . For  $t_1 = t_3 = s, t_2 = t_4 = t$  it follows that  $\operatorname{Var}(X(t) - X(s)) = t - s - s + s = t - s, 0 \leq s < t \leq 1$ . Since  $X(t) - X(s) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} Y_n(S_n(t) - S_n(s)) \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \operatorname{Var}(X(t) - X(s)))$  by Lemma 3.2.4, it holds  $X(t) - X(s) \sim \mathcal{N}(0, t - s)$ , and  $X \stackrel{d}{=} W$  according to Definition 3.1.1.

**Remark 3.2.2** 1. Theorem 3.2.1 is the basis for an approximative simulation of the paths of a Brownian motion through the partial sums  $X^{(n)}(t) = \sum_{k=1}^{n} Y_k S_k(t), t \in [0, 1]$ , for sufficient large  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

#### 3 Wiener Process

2. The construction in Theorem 3.2.1 can be used to construct the Wiener process with continuous paths on the interval  $[0, t_0]$  for arbitrary  $t_0 > 0$ . If  $W = \{W(t), t \in [0, 1]\}$  is a Wiener process on [0, 1] then  $Y = \{Y(t), t \in [0, t_0]\}$  with  $Y(t) = \sqrt{t_0}W(\frac{t}{t_0}), t \in [0, t_0]$ , is a Wiener process on  $[0, t_0]$ .

Exercise 3.2.1 Prove that.

3. The Wiener process W with continuous paths on  $\mathbb{R}_+$  can be constructed as follows. Let  $W^{(n)} = \{W^{(n)}(t), t \in [0, 1]\}$  be independent copies of the Wiener process as in Theorem 3.2.1. Define  $W(t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbb{1}(t \in [n-1, n])[\sum_{k=1}^{n-1} W^{(k)}(1) + W^{(n)}(t - (n-1))], t \ge 0$ , thus,



Fig. 3.3:

Exercise 3.2.2

Show that the introduced stochastic process  $W = \{W(t), t \ge 0\}$  is a Wiener process on  $\mathbb{R}_+$ .

## 3.3 Distribution and path properties of Wiener processes

## 3.3.1 Donsker's invariance principle

Let  $\{W(t), t \in [0,1]\}$  be a Wiener process and  $Z_1, Z_2, \ldots$  a sequence of independent random variables with  $\mathsf{E}Z_i = 0$ ,  $\mathsf{Var} Z_i = 1$ , e.g., one can choose  $\mathsf{P}(Z_i = 1) = \mathsf{P}(Z_i = -1) = \frac{1}{2}$  for all  $i \ge 1$ . For every  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  we define  $\{\tilde{W}^{(n)}(t), t \in [0,1]\}$  by

$$\tilde{W}^{(n)}(t) = \frac{S_{\lfloor nt \rfloor}}{\sqrt{n}} + (nt - \lfloor nt \rfloor) \frac{Z_{\lfloor nt \rfloor + 1}}{\sqrt{n}}, \qquad (3.3.1)$$

where  $S_i = Z_1 + \ldots + Z_i, i \ge 1, S_0 = 0.$ 

Construct an approximation of W by a random walk  $\tilde{W}^{(n)}$  with step size  $Z_i$  as  $n \to \infty$ .

## Theorem 3.3.1 (Invariance principle):

Let  $P_{\tilde{W}^{(n)}}$  and  $P_W$  be the distributions of  $\tilde{W}^{(n)}$  and W in C[0,1]. Then it holds  $P_{\tilde{W}^{(n)}} \stackrel{W}{\Rightarrow} P_W$ , as  $n \to \infty$ , where  $\stackrel{W}{\Rightarrow}$  means the weak convergence in C[0,1], i.e., for any bounded continuous function  $f: C[0,1] \to \mathbb{R}$   $\int f dP_{\tilde{W}^{(n)}} \stackrel{\to}{\to} \int f dP_W$ .

## Remark 3.3.1

In the construction of the approximation  $\tilde{W}^{(n)}(t)$ , any i.i.d. sequence  $\{Z_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  with  $\mathsf{E}Z_n = 0$ , Var  $Z_n = 1$  can be used. This was proven by Monroe Donsker (1951) and bears the name of *in*variance principle since the approximation  $\tilde{W}^{(n)}(\cdot)$  of  $W(\cdot)$  does not depend on the distribution of  $Z_1$ .

This theorem means the convergence of distribution of the whole paths of  $\tilde{W}^{(n)}(\cdot)$  to that of  $W(\cdot)$ . It is quite theoretical to prove (see e.g. [13] 21.6-21.8). Instead, we shall prove only the convergence of finite dimensional distributions.

## Lemma 3.3.1 (Convergence of finite dimensional distributions):

For every  $k \ge 1$  and arbitrary  $t_1, \ldots, t_k \in [0, 1]$  it holds:

$$\left(\tilde{W}^{(n)}(t_1),\ldots,\tilde{W}^{(n)}(t_k)\right)^{\top} \xrightarrow{d} \left(W(t_1),\ldots,W(t_k)\right)^{\top}, n \to \infty.$$

**Proof** For k = 1, the assertion is an easy corollary from the central limit theorem. Consider the special case k = 2 (for k > 2 the proof is analogous). Let  $t_1 < t_2$ . For all  $s_1, s_2 \in \mathbb{R}$  it holds:

$$s_{1}\tilde{W}^{(n)}(t_{1}) + s_{2}\tilde{W}^{(n)}(t_{2}) = (s_{1} + s_{2})\frac{S_{\lfloor nt_{1} \rfloor}}{\sqrt{n}} + s_{2}\frac{(S_{\lfloor nt_{2} \rfloor} - S_{\lfloor nt_{1} \rfloor + 1})}{\sqrt{n}} + Z_{\lfloor nt_{1} \rfloor + 1}\left((nt_{1} - \lfloor nt_{1} \rfloor)\frac{s_{1}}{\sqrt{n}} + \frac{s_{2}}{\sqrt{n}}\right) + Z_{\lfloor nt_{2} \rfloor + 1}(nt_{2} - \lfloor nt_{2} \rfloor)\frac{s_{2}}{\sqrt{n}},$$

since  $S_{\lfloor nt_2 \rfloor} = S_{\lfloor nt_1 \rfloor} + S_{\lfloor nt_2 \rfloor} - S_{\lfloor nt_1 \rfloor + 1} + Z_{\lfloor nt_1 \rfloor + 1}$ 

Now observe that the 4 summands on the right-hand-side of the previous equation are independent and moreover that the latter two summands converge (a.s. and therefore particularly in distribution) to zero.

Consequently, it holds

$$\begin{split} \lim_{n \to \infty} \mathsf{E} e^{i(s_1 \tilde{W}^{(n)}(t_1) + s_2 \tilde{W}^{(n)}(t_2))} &= \lim_{n \to \infty} \mathsf{E} e^{i\frac{s_1 + s_2}{\sqrt{n}} S_{\lfloor nt_1 \rfloor}} \mathsf{E} e^{i\frac{s_2}{\sqrt{n}} (S_{\lfloor nt_2 \rfloor} - S_{\lfloor nt_1 \rfloor + 1})} \\ &= \lim_{n \to \infty} \mathsf{E} e^{i(s_1 + s_2) \sqrt{\frac{\lfloor nt_1 \rfloor}{n}} \frac{S_{\lfloor nt_1 \rfloor}}{\sqrt{\lfloor nt_1 \rfloor}}} \mathsf{E} e^{i\frac{s_2}{\sqrt{n}} S_{\lfloor nt_2 \rfloor - \lfloor nt_1 \rfloor - 1}} \\ &\stackrel{\text{CLT}}{=} e^{-\frac{t_1}{2} (s_1 + s_2)^2} e^{-\frac{t_2 - t_1}{2} s_2^2} \\ &= e^{-\frac{1}{2} (s_1^2 t_1 + 2s_1 s_2 t_1 + s_2^2 t_2)} \\ &= e^{-\frac{1}{2} (s_1^2 t_1 + 2s_1 s_2 \min\{t_1, t_2\} + s_2^2 t_2)} \\ &= \varphi_{(W(t_1), W(t_2))}(s_1, s_2), \end{split}$$

where  $\varphi_{(W(t_1),W(t_2))}$  is the characteristic function of  $(W(t_1),W(t_2))^{\top}$ .

#### 3 Wiener Process

In detail, it holds  $\sqrt{\frac{\lfloor nt_1 \rfloor}{n}} \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} \sqrt{t_1}$ ,  $\frac{S_{\lfloor nt_1 \rfloor}}{\sqrt{\lfloor nt_1 \rfloor}} \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} Y_1 \sim N(0,1)$  by the central limit theorem, analogously  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} S_{\lfloor nt_2 \rfloor - \lfloor nt_1 \rfloor - 1} = \sqrt{\frac{\lfloor nt_2 \rfloor - \lfloor nt_1 \rfloor - 1}{n}} \cdot \frac{S_{\lfloor nt_2 \rfloor - \lfloor nt_1 \rfloor - 1}}{\sqrt{\lfloor nt_2 \rfloor - \lfloor nt_1 \rfloor - 1}} \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} \sqrt{t_2 - t_1} Y_2$ , where  $Y_2 \sim N(0,1)$  is independent of  $Y_1$ . The equivalence of convergence in distribution and weak convergence together with the fact that  $\varphi_Y(s) = \mathsf{E}e^{isY} = e^{-s^2\sigma^2/2}$  if  $Y \sim N(0,\sigma^2)$  finishes the proof.

## 3.3.2 Law of large numbers

Introduce

$$M_t = \max_{s \in [0,t]} W(s), t > 0, \tag{3.3.2}$$

where  $W = \{W(t), t \ge 0\}$  is a Wiener process. The mapping  $M_t : \Omega \to [0, \infty)$  given in relation (3.3.2) is a well-defined random variable since it holds:  $\max_{s \in [0,t]} W(s, \omega) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \max_{i=1,\dots,n} W(\frac{it}{n}, \omega)$ 

for all  $\omega \in \Omega$  since the trajectories of  $\{W(t), t \ge 0\}$  are continuous.

The following theorem will be proven in Section 5.6:

## Theorem 3.3.2

Let  $W = \{W(t), t \ge 0\}$  be the Wiener process defined on a probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathsf{P})$ . Then it holds:

$$\mathsf{P}(M_t > x) = 2\mathsf{P}(W(t) > x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi t}} \int_x^\infty e^{-\frac{y^2}{2t}} dy, \quad x \ge 0, \quad t > 0.$$
(3.3.3)

From (3.3.3) it follows that  $\max_{t \in [0,1]} W(t)$  has an exponentially bounded tail: thus  $\max_{t \in [0,1]} W(t)$  has finite k-th moments,  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ .

Corollary 3.3.1 (Law of large numbers):

Let  $\{W(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a Wiener process. Then

$$\frac{W(t)}{t} \xrightarrow[t \to \infty]{a.s.} 0.$$

**Proof** For any  $t \ge 0, \exists ! n \in \mathbb{N} : t \in [n, n+1)$ . Show that

$$\frac{W(t)}{t} \overset{a.s.}{\sim} \frac{W(n)}{n} \quad (n, t \to \infty, \ n \in \mathbb{N}) \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{W(n)}{n} \overset{a.s.}{\to} 0 \quad (n \to \infty).$$

Using the strong law of large numbers, we get

$$\frac{1}{n}W(n) = \frac{1}{n}\sum_{i=1}^{n} (W(i) - W(i-1)) \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{a.s.} \mathbb{E}W(1) = 0$$

due to the independence and stationarity of increments  $W(i) - W(i-1) \stackrel{d}{=} W(1) - W(0) = W(1)$ ,  $i \in \mathbb{N}$  of W, and since  $W(1) \sim N(0, 1)$ . Now,

$$\begin{split} \left|\frac{W(t)}{t} - \frac{W(n)}{n}\right| &\leq \left|\frac{W(t)}{t} - \frac{W(n)}{t}\right| + \left|\frac{W(n)}{t} - \frac{W(n)}{n}\right| \\ &\leq \left|W(n)\left(\frac{1}{t} - \frac{1}{n}\right)\right| + \frac{1}{n}\sup_{s\in[0,1]}|W(n+s) - W(n)| \\ &\leq \left|\frac{2}{n}W(n)\right| + \frac{Z(n)}{n}, \end{split}$$

where  $Z(n) = \sup_{s \in [0,1]} |W(n+s) - W(n)|, n \in \mathbb{N}$  is a sequence of i.i.d. random variables with  $Z(n) \stackrel{d}{=} Z(0) = \sup_{s \in [0,1]} |W(s)|$ . Show that  $\mathbb{E}Z(0) < \infty$ . If it is so then

$$\frac{Z(n)}{n} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} Z(i) - \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} Z(i) \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{a.s.} \mathbb{E}Z(0) - \mathbb{E}Z(0) = 0$$

by the strong law of large numbers. Estimate

$$\begin{split} P(Z(0) > x) &\leq P\left(\max_{s \in [0,1]} W(s) > x\right) + P\left(\max_{s \in [0,1]} (-W(s)) > x\right) \\ &= 2P\left(\max_{s \in [0,1]} W(s) > x\right) = 2\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_{x}^{\infty} e^{-y^{2}/2} dy \end{split}$$

by Theorem 3.3.2, since  $\{-W(s), s \ge 0\}$  is a Wiener process as well due to its symmetry, cf. Theorem 3.3.3. Then

$$\mathbb{E}Z(0) = \int_{0}^{\infty} P(Z(0) > x) dx \le 2\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_{0}^{\infty} \int_{x}^{\infty} e^{-y^{2}/2} dy dx = 4\mathsf{E}(X1(X \ge 0)) < \infty$$

for  $X \sim N(0, 1)$ .

### 3.3.3 Invariance properties

Specific transformations of the Wiener process yield again the Wiener process.

### Theorem 3.3.3

Let  $\{W(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a Wiener process. Then the stochastic processes  $\{Y^{(i)}(t), t \ge 0\}$ ,  $i = 1, \ldots, 4$ , with

are Wiener processes as well.

**Proof** 1.  $Y^{(i)}(0) = 0$  a.s., i = 1, ..., 4.

- 2.  $Y^{(i)}, i = 1, ..., 4$ , have independent increments with  $Y^{(i)}(t_2) Y^{(i)}(t_1) \sim \mathcal{N}(0, t_2 t_1)$ .
- 3.  $Y^{(i)}, i = 1, ..., 3$ , have continuous trajectories.  $\{Y^{(4)}(t), t \ge 0\}$  has continuous trajectories for t > 0.
- 4. We have to prove that  $Y^{(4)}(t)$  is a.s. continuous at t = 0, i.e. that  $\lim_{t \to 0} tW(\frac{1}{t}) \stackrel{a.s.}{=} 0$ .  $\lim_{t \to 0} tW(\frac{1}{t}) = \lim_{t \to \infty} \frac{W(t)}{t} \stackrel{a.s.}{=} 0$  by Corollary 3.3.1.

Then  $Y^{(i)}$ , i = 1, ..., 4 are Wiener processes by Definition 3.1.1.

## 3.3.4 Path properties

## Corollary 3.3.2

Let  $\{W(t), t \ge 0\}$  be the Wiener process. Then it holds:

$$\mathsf{P}\left(\sup_{t\geq 0} W(t) = \infty\right) = \mathsf{P}\left(\inf_{t\geq 0} W(t) = -\infty\right) = 1,$$

and consequently

$$\mathsf{P}\left(\sup_{t\geq 0} W(t) = \infty, \ \inf_{t\geq 0} W(t) = -\infty\right) = 1.$$

**Proof** For x, c > 0 it holds:

$$\mathsf{P}\left(\sup_{t\geq 0} W(t) > x\right) = \mathsf{P}\left(\sup_{t\geq 0} W\left(\frac{t}{c}\right) > \frac{x}{\sqrt{c}}\right) = \mathsf{P}\left(\sup_{t\geq 0} W(t) > \frac{x}{\sqrt{c}}\right)$$
(3.3.4)  
$$\xrightarrow[c \to +\infty]{} \mathsf{P}(\sup_{t\geq 0} W(t) > 0)$$
  
$$\xrightarrow[c \to +0]{} \mathsf{P}(\sup_{t\geq 0} W(t) = +\infty)$$

does not depend on x. Then

$$1 = \mathsf{P}\left(\left\{\sup_{t \ge 0} W(t) = 0\right\} \cup \left\{\sup_{t \ge 0} W(t) > 0\right\}\right) = \mathsf{P}\left(\sup_{t \ge 0} W(t) = 0\right) + \underbrace{\mathsf{P}\left(\sup_{t \ge 0} W(t) > 0\right)}_{P\left(\sup_{t \ge 0} W(t) = +\infty\right)}.$$

Moreover, it holds

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{P}\left(\sup_{t\geq 0} W(t) = 0\right) &= \mathsf{P}\left(\sup_{t\geq 0} W(t) \leq 0\right) \leq \mathsf{P}\left(W(1) \leq 0, \ \sup_{t\geq 1} W(t) \leq 0\right) \\ &= \mathsf{P}\left(W(1) \leq 0, \ \sup_{t\geq 1} (W(t) - W(1)) \leq -W(1)\right) \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{0} \mathsf{P}\left(\sup_{t\geq 1} (\frac{W(t) - W(1)}{Y^{(2)}(t) \stackrel{d}{=} W(t)}) \leq -W(1) \mid W(1) = x\right) \mathsf{P}_{W(1)} (dx) \\ & \frac{Y^{(2)} \stackrel{d}{=} W}{=} \int_{-\infty}^{0} \mathsf{P}\left(\sup_{t\geq 0} W(t) \leq -x\right) \mathsf{P}_{W(1)} (dx) \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{0} \mathsf{P}\left(\sup_{t\geq 0} W(t) = 0\right) \mathsf{P}_{W(1)} (dx) \\ &= \mathsf{P}\left(\sup_{t\geq 0} W(t) = 0\right) \frac{1}{2}, \end{split}$$

since  $\sup_{t\geq 0} W(t) \geq 0$  a.s., and  $\mathsf{P}\left(\sup_{t\geq 0} W(t) \leq -x\right)$  does not depend on x by relation (3.3.4), so take x = 0. Thus  $\mathsf{P}\left(\sup_{t\geq 0} W(t) = 0\right) = 0$  and hence  $\mathsf{P}\left(\sup_{t\geq 0} W(t) = \infty\right) = 1$ .

Analogously one can show that  $\mathsf{P}(\inf_{t\geq 0} W(t) = -\infty) = 1$ .

The remaining part of the claim follows from  $P(A \cap B) = 1$  for any  $A, B \in A$  with P(A) = P(B) = 1, since  $P(A \cap B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cup B) = 1 + 1 - 1 = 1$ .

- **Remark 3.3.2** 1.  $\mathsf{P}\left(\sup_{t\geq 0} X(t) = \infty, \inf_{t\geq 0} X(t) = -\infty\right) = 1$  implies that the trajectories of W oscillate between positive and negative values on  $[0, \infty)$  an infinite number of times.
  - 2. Additionally to the strong law of large numbers (Corollary 3.3.1), the Wiener process satisfies the law of iterated logarithm:

$$\limsup_{t \to \infty} \frac{W(t)}{\sqrt{2t \log \log(t)}} \stackrel{a.s.}{=} 1, \quad \liminf_{t \to \infty} \frac{W(t)}{\sqrt{2t \log \log(t)}} \stackrel{a.s.}{=} -1.$$

Its proof can be found e.g. in [3, Chapter 19, Theorem 3.2].

## Corollary 3.3.3

Let  $\{W(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a Wiener process. Then it holds

 $\mathsf{P}(\omega \in \Omega : W(t, \omega) \text{ is nowhere differentiable on } [0, \infty)) = 1.$ 

## Proof

$$\begin{split} \{\omega \in \Omega : W(t,\omega) \text{ is nowhere differentiable on } [0,\infty) \} \\ = \cap_{n=0}^{\infty} \{\omega \in \Omega : W(t,\omega) \text{ is nowhere differentiable on } [n,n+1) \}. \end{split}$$

It is sufficient to show that  $\mathsf{P}(\omega \in \Omega : W(t, \omega))$  is differentiable for a  $t_0 = t_0(\omega) \in [0, 1]) = 0$ . Define the set

$$A_{nm} = \left\{ \omega \in \Omega : \exists t_0 = t_0(\omega) \in [0,1] \text{ with } |W(t_0(\omega) + h, \omega) - W(t_0(\omega), \omega))| \le mh, \forall h \in \left[0, \frac{4}{n}\right] \right\}.$$

Then it holds

$$\{\omega \in \Omega : W(t,\omega) \text{ differentiable for a } t_0 = t_0(\omega)\} \subseteq \bigcup_{m \ge 1} \bigcup_{n \ge 1} A_{nm}$$

We have to show  $\mathsf{P}(\bigcup_{m\geq 1} \bigcup_{n\geq 1} A_{nm}) = 0$ . Since  $\mathsf{P}\left(\bigcup_{m\geq 1} \bigcup_{n\geq 1} A_{nm}\right) \leq \sum_{m\geq 1} \sum_{n\geq 1} \mathsf{P}(A_{nm})$ , it is sufficient to show that  $\mathsf{P}(A_{nm}) = 0 \ \forall n, m \in \mathbb{N}$ .

Let 
$$k_0(\omega) = \operatorname{argmin}_{k=1,\dots,n} \{ \frac{k}{n} \ge t_0(\omega) \}$$
. Then it holds for  $\omega \in A_{nm}$  and  $j = 0, 1, 2$ 

$$\begin{aligned} \left| W\left(\frac{k_0(\omega)+j+1}{n},\omega\right) - W\left(\frac{k_0(\omega)+j}{n},\omega\right) \right| &\leq \left| W\left(\frac{k_0(\omega)+j+1}{n},\omega\right) - W\left(t_0(\omega),\omega\right) \right| \\ &+ \left| W\left(\frac{k_0(\omega)+j}{n},\omega\right) - W\left(t_0(\omega),\omega\right) \right| \\ &\leq \frac{8m}{n}. \end{aligned}$$

Let  $\Delta_n(k) = W(\frac{k+1}{n}) - W(\frac{k}{n}) \sim N(0, 1/n)$ . Then

$$P(|\Delta_n(k)| \le x) = \sqrt{\frac{n}{2\pi}} \int_{-x}^x e^{-\frac{nt^2}{2}} dt \le \frac{2x\sqrt{n}}{\sqrt{2\pi}}, \quad \forall \ x \ge 0.$$

#### 3 Wiener Process

Then it holds

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{P}(A_{nm}) &\leq \mathsf{P}\left(\bigcup_{k=0}^{n}\bigcap_{j=0}^{2}\left\{|\Delta_{n}(k+j)| \leq \frac{8m}{n}\right\}\right) \\ &\leq \sum_{k=0}^{n}\mathsf{P}\left(\bigcap_{j=0}^{2}\left\{|\Delta_{n}(k+j)| \leq \frac{8m}{n}\right\}\right) = \sum_{k=0}^{n}\left(\mathsf{P}\left(|\Delta_{n}(0)| \leq \frac{8m}{n}\right)\right)^{3} \\ &\leq (n+1)\left(\frac{16m}{\sqrt{2\pi n}}\right)^{3} \to 0, \quad n \to \infty, \end{aligned}$$

by the independence and stationarity of the increments of the Wiener process. Since  $A_{nm} \subset A_{n+1,m}$ , it follows  $\mathsf{P}(A_{nm}) \nearrow$  and hence  $\mathsf{P}(A_{nm}) = 0 \forall n, m \in \mathbb{N}$ .

## Corollary 3.3.4

With probability 1 it holds:

$$\sup_{n \ge 1} \sup_{0 \le t_0 < \dots < t_n \le 1} \sum_{i=1}^n |W(t_i) - W(t_{i-1})| = \infty,$$

i.e.  $\{W(t), t \in [0,1]\}$  possesses a.s. trajectories with unbounded variation.

**Proof** Since every function  $g : [0,1] \to \mathbb{R}$  with bounded variation is differentiable almost everywhere<sup>1</sup>, the assertion follows from Corollary 3.3.3.

Alternative proof

It is sufficient to show that  $\lim_{n\to\infty}\sum_{i=1}^{2^n} \left| W\left(\frac{it}{2^n}\right) - W\left(\frac{(i-1)t}{2^n}\right) \right| = \infty$  for t = 1. Since W has independent and stationary increments, it holds

$$\sum_{i=1}^{2^{n}} \underbrace{\left| W\left(\frac{it}{2^{n}}\right) - W\left(\frac{(i-1)t}{2^{n}}\right) \right|}_{Y_{i} \stackrel{d}{=} \sqrt{\frac{t}{2^{n}}} X_{i}, X_{i} \sim N(0,1) \text{ - i.i.d.}} = \frac{\sqrt{t}}{2^{n/2}} \sum_{i=1}^{2^{n}} |X_{i}| = 2^{n/2} \sqrt{t} \underbrace{\frac{1}{2^{n}} \sum_{i=1}^{2^{n}} |X_{i}|}_{\substack{n \to \infty}} \sum_{n \to \infty}^{a.s} 2^{n/2} \sqrt{t} \mathsf{E}|X_{1}|$$

by the strong law of large numbers, where  $X_1 \sim N(0, 1)$ . Hence,

$$\sum_{i=1}^{2^n} \left| W\left(\frac{it}{2^n}\right) - W\left(\frac{(i-1)t}{2^n}\right) \right| \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{a.s} + \infty.$$

#### Remark 3.3.3

The quadratic variation of W over [s, t] is equal to t - s;

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left| W(t_i^{(n)}) - W(t_{i-1}^{(n)}) \right|^2 = t - s$$

a.s. or in  $L^2$ , where  $\Gamma_n = \{t_i^{(n)}\}_{i=1}^n$  is a sequence of subdivisions of [s,t] such that  $s \leq t_1 \leq \cdots \leq t_n \leq t$  and  $\Gamma_n \subseteq \Gamma_{n+1}, \forall n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>This follows from the fact that any function with bounded variation can be represented as a difference of two non-decreasing monotone functions, each of which is differentiable a.e. on [0,1] by Lebesgue's theorem. Cf. [14], 6.2, p. 335

## 3.4 Additional exercises

### Exercise 3.4.1

Give an intuitive (exact!) method to realize trajectories of a Wiener process  $W = \{W(t), t \in [0, 1]\}$ . Thereby use the independence and the distribution of the increments of W.

## Exercise 3.4.2

Given are the Wiener process  $W = \{W(t), t \in [0,1]\}$  and  $L := \operatorname{argmax}_{t \in [0,1]} W(t)$ . Show that it holds:

$$\mathsf{P}(L \le x) = \frac{2}{\pi} \arcsin \sqrt{x}, \quad x \in [0, 1].$$

Hint: Use relation  $\max_{r \in [0,t]} W(r) \stackrel{d}{=} |W(t)|$ .

## Exercise 3.4.3

For the simulation of a Wiener process  $W = \{W(t), t \in [0, 1]\}$  we also can use the approximation

$$W_n(t) = \sum_{k=1}^n S_k(t) z_k$$

where  $S_k(t)$ ,  $t \in [0,1]$ ,  $k \ge 1$  are the Schauder functions, and  $z_k \sim \mathcal{N}(0,1)$  i.i.d. random variables and the series converges almost surely for all  $t \in [0,1]$   $(n \to \infty)$ . Show that for all  $t \in [0,1]$  the approximation  $W_n(t)$  also converges in the  $L^2$ -sense to W(t).

### Exercise 3.4.4

For the Wiener process  $W = \{W(t), t \ge 0\}$  consider the process of the maximum  $M = \{M_t := \max_{s \in [0,t]} W(s), t \ge 0\}$ . Show that it holds:

a) The density  $f_{M_t}$  of the maximum  $M_t$  is given by

$$f_{M_t}(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi t}} \exp\left\{-\frac{x^2}{2t}\right\} \mathbf{1}\{x \ge 0\}.$$

b) Expected value and variance of  $M_t$  are given by

$$\mathsf{E}M_t = \sqrt{rac{2t}{\pi}}, \quad \mathsf{Var}\, M_t = t(1-2/\pi).$$

Now we define  $\tau(x) := \operatorname{argmin}_{s \in \mathbb{R}} \{ W(s) = x \}$  as the first point in time for which the Wiener process takes value x.

c) Determine the density of  $\tau(x)$  and show that  $\mathsf{E}\tau(x) = \infty$ .

#### Exercise 3.4.5

Let the Wiener process  $W = \{W(t), t \ge 0\}$  be given. Quantity Q(a, b) denotes the probability that W exceeds the half line  $y = at + b, t \ge 0, a, b > 0$ . Prove that

- a) Q(a,b) = Q(b,a) and  $Q(a,b_1 + b_2) = Q(a,b_1)Q(a,b_2)$ ,
- b) Q(a,b) is given by  $Q(a,b) = \exp\{-2ab\}$ .

#### Exercise 3.4.6

Show that the Wiener process is a.s.  $\gamma$ -Hölder-continuous with  $\gamma \in (0, 1/2)$ .

#### Exercise 3.4.7

Show that the Wiener process is a.s. not absolutely continuous.

# 4 Lévy Processes

#### **Definition 4.0.1**

A stochastic process  $\{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  is called Lévy process, if

- 1. X(0) = 0 a.s.,
- 2.  $\{X(t)\}$  has stationary and independent increments,
- 3.  $\{X(t)\}$  is stochastically continuous, i.e for an arbitrary  $\varepsilon > 0, t_0 \ge 0$ :

$$\lim_{t \to t_0} \mathsf{P}(|X(t) - X(t_0)| > \varepsilon) = 0.$$

**Remark 4.0.1** • One can easily see that a compound Poisson process N(t)

 $X = \{X(t) = \sum_{i=1}^{N(t)} U_i \cdot \mathbb{1}(N(t) > 0), t \ge 0\}$  fulfills the three conditions, where  $\{U_i\}_{i\ge 1}$  are i.i.d. and  $N = \{N(t), t \ge 0\}$  is a homogeneous Poisson process with intensity  $\lambda$ . Indeed for arbitrary  $\varepsilon > 0$  it holds

$$\mathsf{P}\left(|X(t) - X(t_0)| > \varepsilon\right) \le \mathsf{P}\left(|\underbrace{X(t) - X(t_0)}_{\stackrel{d}{=} X(t-t_0)}| > 0\right) = \mathsf{P}(N(t-t_0) > 0) = 1 - e^{-\lambda|t-t_0|} \xrightarrow[t \to t_0]{} 0$$

Then a compound Poisson process is a Lévy process.

• It holds for the Wiener process W for arbitrary  $\varepsilon > 0$ 

$$\mathsf{P}\left(|W(t) - W(t_0)| > \varepsilon\right) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi(t - t_0)}} \int_{\varepsilon}^{\infty} \exp\left(-\frac{y^2}{2(t - t_0)}\right) dy$$
$$\stackrel{x = \frac{y}{\sqrt{t - t_0}}}{=} \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_{\frac{\varepsilon}{\sqrt{t - t_0}}}^{\infty} e^{-\frac{x^2}{2}} dx \xrightarrow[t \to t_0]{} 0.$$

Hence, the Wiener process is a Lévy process as well.

Later we shall show that all Lévy processes are mixtures and a limiting case of a compound Poisson and Wiener processes.

## 4.1 Infinite Divisibility

## Definition 4.1.1

Let  $X : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}$  be an arbitrary random variable. Then X is called *infinitely divisible*, if for arbitrary  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  there exist i.i.d. random variables  $Y_1^{(n)}, \ldots, Y_n^{(n)}$  with  $X \stackrel{d}{=} Y_1^{(n)} + \ldots + Y_n^{(n)}$ .

## Lemma 4.1.1

The random variable  $X : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}$  is infinitely divisible if and only if the characteristic function  $\varphi_X$  of X can be expressed for every  $n \ge 1$  in the form

$$\varphi_X(s) = (\varphi_n(s))^n \text{ for all } s \in \mathbb{R},$$

where  $\varphi_n$  are characteristic functions of random variables.

**Proof** ",  $\Rightarrow$  " Let  $Y_1^{(n)}, \ldots, Y_n^{(n)}$  be i.i.d. random variables,"  $X \stackrel{d}{=} Y_1^{(n)} + \ldots + Y_n^{(n)}$ . Hence, it follows that  $\varphi_X(s) = \prod_{i=1}^n \varphi_{Y_i^{(n)}}(s) = (\varphi_n(s))^n$ .

"  $\Leftarrow$  " Now assume that  $\varphi_X(s) = (\varphi_n(s))^n$ ,  $s \in \mathbb{R}$ . Then there exist  $Y_1^{(n)}, \ldots, Y_n^{(n)}$  i.i.d. with characteristic function  $\varphi_n$  and  $\varphi_{Y_1^{(n)} + \cdots + Y_n^{(n)}}(s) = (\varphi_n(s))^n = \varphi_X(s)$ . By the uniqueness theorem for characteristic functions it follows that  $X \stackrel{d}{=} Y_1^{(n)} + \ldots + Y_n^{(n)}$ .

#### Theorem 4.1.1

Let  $\{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a Lévy process. Then the random variable X(t) is infinitely divisible for every  $t \ge 0$ .

**Proof** For arbitrary  $t \ge 0$  and  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  it obviously holds that

$$X(t) = X\left(\frac{t}{n}\right) + \left(X\left(\frac{2t}{n}\right) - X\left(\frac{t}{n}\right)\right) + \ldots + \left(X\left(\frac{nt}{n}\right) - X\left(\frac{(n-1)t}{n}\right)\right).$$

Since  $\{X(t)\}$  has independent and stationary increments, the summands are obviously independent and identically distributed random variables.

Let us recall a lemma from the basic probability course:

#### Lemma 4.1.2

Let  $X_1, X_2, \ldots : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}$  be a sequence of random variables. If there exists a function  $\varphi : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{C}$ , such that  $\varphi(s)$  is continuous in s = 0 and  $\lim_{n \to \infty} \varphi_{X_n}(s) = \varphi(s)$  for all  $s \in \mathbb{R}$ , then  $\varphi$  is the characteristic function of a random variable X and it holds that  $X_n \xrightarrow{d} X$ .

## Definition 4.1.2

Let  $\nu$  be a measure on the measurable space  $(\mathbb{R}, \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}))$ . Then  $\nu$  is called a *Lévy measure*, if  $\nu(\{0\}) = 0$  and

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}} \min\{y^2, 1\}\nu(dy) < \infty.$$
(4.1.1)

**Remark 4.1.1** • Apparently every Lévy measure is  $\sigma$ -finite and

 $\nu\left(\left(-a,a\right)^{c}\right) < \infty, \quad \text{for all } a > 0, \tag{4.1.2}$ 

where  $(-a, a)^c = \mathbb{R} \setminus (-a, a)$ .

- In particular every finite measure  $\nu$  is a Lévy measure, if  $\nu(\{0\}) = 0$ .
- If  $\nu(dy) = g(y)dy$  then  $g(y) = \mathcal{O}\left(\frac{1}{|y|^{\delta}}\right)$  for  $y \to 0$ , where  $\delta < 3$ .



Fig. 4.1:  $y \mapsto \min\{y^2, 1\}$ 

• A condition equivalent to (4.1.1) is

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{y^2}{1+y^2} \nu(dy) < \infty, \quad \text{since} \quad \frac{y^2}{1+y^2} \le \min\left\{y^2, 1\right\} \le 2\frac{y^2}{1+y^2}.$$
(4.1.3)

#### Theorem 4.1.2

Let  $a \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $b \ge 0$  be arbitrary and let  $\nu$  be an arbitrary Lévy measure. Let the characteristic function of a random variable  $X : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}$  be given through the function  $\varphi : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{C}$  with

$$\varphi(s) = \exp\left\{ias - \frac{bs^2}{2} + \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(e^{isy} - 1 - isy\mathbf{1}(y \in (-1, 1))\right)\nu(dy)\right\} \quad \text{for all } s \in \mathbb{R}.$$
(4.1.4)

Then X is infinitely divisible.

**Remark 4.1.2** • The formula (4.1.4) is also called *Lévy-Khintchine formula*.

- The inversion of Theorem 4.1.2 also holds, hence every infinitely divisible random variable has such a representation. Therefore the characteristic triplet  $(a, b, \nu)$  is also called *Lévy* characteristic of an infinitely divisible random variable.
- The map  $\eta : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{C}$  with

$$\eta(s) = ias - \frac{bs^2}{2} + \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left( e^{isy} - 1 - isy \mathbf{1}(y \in (-1, 1)) \right) \nu(dy)$$

from (4.1.4) is called *Lévy exponent* of this infinitely divisible distribution.

## Proof of Theorem 4.1.2

1st step: Show that  $\varphi$  is a characteristic function.

• For  $y \in (-1, 1)$  it holds

$$\left|e^{isy} - 1 - isy\right| = \left|\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(isy)^k}{k!} - 1 - isy\right| = \left|\sum_{k=2}^{\infty} \frac{(isy)^k}{k!}\right| \le y^2 \sum_{\substack{k=2\\ i=c}}^{\infty} \frac{|s|^k}{k!} \le y^2 c$$

Hence it follows from (4.1.1) that the integral in (4.1.4) exists and therefore it is well-defined.

• Let now  $\{c_n\}$  be an arbitrary sequence of numbers with  $c_n > c_{n+1} > \ldots > 0$  and  $\lim_{n\to\infty} c_n = 0$ . Then the function  $\varphi_n : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{C}$  with

$$\varphi_n(s) := \exp\left\{is\left(a - \int_{[-c_n, c_n]^c \cap (-1, 1)} y\nu(dy)\right) - \frac{bs^2}{2}\right\} \exp\left\{\int_{[-c_n, c_n]^c} \left(e^{isy} - 1\right)\nu(dy)\right\}$$

is the characteristic function of the sum of independent random variables  $Z_1^{(n)}$  and  $Z_2^{(n)}$ , since

- the first factor is the characteristic function of the normal distribution with expectation  $a \int_{[-c_n,c_n]^c \cap (-1,1)} y\nu(dy)$  and variance b.
- the second factor is the characteristic function of a compound Poisson distribution with parameters

$$\lambda = \nu([-c_n, c_n]^c) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathsf{P}_U(\cdot) = \nu(\cdot \cap [-c_n, c_n]^c) / \nu([-c_n, c_n]^c))$$

by Theorem 2.2.2, 2.

• Furthermore  $\lim_{n\to\infty} \varphi_n(s) = \varphi(s)$  for all  $s \in \mathbb{R}$ , where  $\varphi$  is obviously continuous in 0, since it holds for the function  $\psi : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{C}$  in the exponent of (4.1.4)

$$\psi(s) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left( e^{isy} - 1 - isy \mathbb{1} \left( y \in (-1, 1) \right) \right) \nu(dy) \quad \text{for all } s \in \mathbb{R}$$

that  $|\psi(s)| \leq cs^2 \int_{(-1,1)} y^2 \nu(dy) + \int_{(-1,1)^c} |e^{isy} - 1| \nu(dy)$ . Out of this and from (4.1.2) it follows by Lebesgue's theorem that  $\lim_{s \to 0} \psi(s) = 0$ .

• Lemma 4.1.2 yields that the function  $\varphi$  given in (4.1.4) is the characteristic function of a random variable.

2nd step:

The infinite divisibility of this random variable follows from Lemma 4.1.1 and out of the fact, that for arbitrary  $n \in \mathbb{N} \ \frac{\nu}{n}$  is also a Lévy measure and that

$$\varphi_n(s) = \exp\left\{i\frac{a}{n}s - \frac{b}{n}s^2 + \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(e^{isy} - 1 - isy\mathbf{1}(y \in (-1, 1))\right) \left(\frac{\nu}{n}\right) (dy)\right\} \quad \text{for all } s \in \mathbb{R}.$$

#### Remark 4.1.3

By the proof of Theorem 4.1.2, it holds  $X \stackrel{d}{=} \lim_{n \to \infty} (Y_n + Z_n)$  for an infinitely divisible random variable X, where the limit is a limit in distribution, and  $\{Y_n\}$  and  $\{Z_n\}$  are independent sequences of random variables such that  $Y_n$  is normally distributed and  $Z_n$  is compound Poisson distributed. Due to this, the part  $as - bs^2/2$  is called the *Gaussian part*, and  $\psi(s)$  the jump part of the Lévy exponent  $\eta(s)$ .

## 4.2 Lévy-Khintchine Representation

Let  $\{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a Lévy process. We want to represent the characteristic function of X(t),  $t \ge 0$ , through the Lévy-Khintchine formula.

4 Lévy Processes

## Lemma 4.2.1

Let  $\{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a stochastically continuous process, i.e. for all  $\varepsilon > 0$  and  $t_0 \ge 0$  it holds that  $\lim_{t\to t_0} \mathsf{P}(|X(t) - X(t_0)| > \varepsilon) = 0$ . Then for every  $s \in \mathbb{R}, t \mapsto \varphi_{X(t)}(s)$  is a continuous map from  $[0, \infty)$  to  $\mathbb{C}$ .

**Proof** Fix an  $s \in \mathbb{R}$ . It holds that

•  $y \mapsto e^{isy}$  continuous in 0, i.e. for all  $\varepsilon > 0$  there exists a  $\delta_1 > 0$ , such that

$$\sup_{y \in (-\delta_1, \delta_1)} \left| e^{isy} - 1 \right| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2}.$$

•  $\{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  is stochastically continuous, i.e. for all  $t_0 \ge 0$  there exists a  $\delta_2 > 0$ , such that

$$\sup_{t \ge 0, |t-t_0| < \delta_2} \mathsf{P}\left(|X(t) - X(t_0)| > \delta_1\right) < \frac{\varepsilon}{4}.$$

• Hence, it follows that for  $s \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $t \ge 0$  and  $|t - t_0| < \delta_2$  it holds

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \varphi_{X(t)}(s) - \varphi_{X(t_0)}(s) \right| &= \left| \mathsf{E} \left( e^{isX(t)} - e^{isX(t_0)} \right) \right| \leq \mathsf{E} \left| e^{isX(t_0)} \left( e^{is(X(t) - X(t_0))} - 1 \right) \right| \\ &= \left| \mathsf{E} \left| e^{is(X(t) - X(t_0))} - 1 \right| = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left| e^{isy} - 1 \right| \mathsf{P}_{X(t) - X(t_0)}(dy) \\ &\leq \int_{(-\delta_1, \delta_1)^c} \left| e^{isy} - 1 \right| \mathsf{P}_{X(t) - X(t_0)}(dy) \\ &+ \int_{(-\delta_1, \delta_1)^c} \underbrace{\left| e^{isy} - 1 \right|}_{\leq 2} \mathsf{P}_{X(t) - X(t_0)}(dy) \\ &\leq \sup_{y \in (-\delta_1, \delta_1)} \left| e^{isy} - 1 \right| + 2\mathsf{P}\left( |X(t) - X(t_0)| > \delta_1 \right) \leq \varepsilon. \end{aligned}$$

#### Theorem 4.2.1

Let  $\{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a Lévy process. Then for all  $t \ge 0$  it holds

$$\varphi_{X(t)}(s) = e^{t\eta(s)}, \quad s \in \mathbb{R}$$

where  $\eta : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{C}$  is a continuous function. In particular it holds that

$$\varphi_{X(t)}(s) = e^{t\eta(s)} = \left(e^{\eta(s)}\right)^t = \left(\varphi_{X(1)}(s)\right)^t, \text{ for all } s \in \mathbb{R}, \ t \ge 0.$$

**Proof** Due to stationarity and independence of increments we have for any  $t, t' \ge 0$ 

$$\varphi_{X(t+t')}(s) = \mathsf{E}e^{isX(t+t')} = \mathsf{E}\left(e^{isX(t)}e^{is(X(t+t')-X(t))}\right) = \varphi_{X(t)}(s)\varphi_{X(t')}(s), \ s \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Let  $g_s: [0,\infty) \to \mathbb{C}$  be defined by  $g_s(t) = \varphi_{X(t)}(s), s \in \mathbb{R}$ , then  $g_s(t+t') = g_s(t)g_s(t'), t, t' \ge 0$ . Since X(0) = 0, we have

 $\begin{cases} g_s(t+t') = g_s(t)g_s(t'), \quad t,t' \ge 0, \\ g_s(0) = 1, \\ g_s: [0,\infty) \to \mathbb{C} \text{ continuous.} \end{cases}$ 

Hence there exists  $\eta : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{C}$  such that  $g_s(t) = e^{\eta(s)t}$  for all  $s \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $t \ge 0$ . It is straightforward that  $\varphi_{X(1)}(s) = e^{\eta(s)}$ . It follows that  $\eta$  is continuous, since any characteristic function is uniformly continuous, see the course on basic probability, Theorem 5.1.1, 4).

## Definition 4.2.1

A family  $\{Q_{\lambda}, \lambda \in \Lambda\}$  of probability measures is called *weakly relatively compact*, if an arbitrary sequence of measures  $\{Q_{\lambda_n}\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  has a subsequence  $\{Q_{\lambda_{n_k}}\}_{k\in\mathbb{N}}$ , which converges weakly.

### Definition 4.2.2

Let  $\mathcal{B}$  be the Borel  $\sigma$ -algebra on a metric space  $\mathcal{S}$ . A family of probability measures  $Q = \{Q_{\lambda}, \lambda \in \Lambda\}$  on  $(\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{B})$  is called *tight* if for all  $\varepsilon > 0$  there exists a compact set  $K_{\varepsilon} \in \mathcal{B}$  such that  $Q_{\lambda}(K_{\varepsilon}^{c}) < \varepsilon$  for all  $\lambda \in \Lambda$ .

## Lemma 4.2.2 (Prokhorov):

If the family of probability measures  $Q = \{Q_{\lambda}, \lambda \in \Lambda\}$  on the metric measurable space  $(S, \mathcal{B})$  is tight then it is weakly relatively compact. If S is a Polish<sup>1</sup> space then every weakly relatively compact family  $Q = \{Q_{\lambda}, \lambda \in \Lambda\}$  of probability measures is also tight.

<u>Proof:</u> See [19, p. 318], [4, p. 154 and Appendix 2], [13, p. 261-263].

The lemma of Prokhorov is used to prove the weak convergence of a sequence of probability measures, by checking its tightness and the convergence of all finite dimensional distributions. In particular, if S is compact then every family of probability measures on  $(S, \mathcal{B})$  is tight, since one can choose  $K_{\varepsilon} = S$  for all  $\varepsilon > 0$ .

#### Remark 4.2.1

Lemma 4.2.2 holds also for uniformly bounded sequences of finite measures: Let  $\mu_1, \mu_2, \ldots$  be a sequence of finite measures (on  $\mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R})$ ) with

- 1.  $\sup_{n>1} \mu_n(\mathbb{R}) \leq c < \infty$  (uniform boundedness)
- 2.  $\{\mu_n\}$  is tight.

Then  $\{\mu_n\}$  is weakly relatively compact.

**Proof** See [20], page 122 - 123.

### Theorem 4.2.2

Let  $\{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a Lévy process. Then there exist  $a \in \mathbb{R}, b \ge 0$  and a Lévy measure  $\nu$ , such that

$$\varphi_{X(1)}(s) = e^{ias - \frac{bs^2}{2}} + \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left( e^{isy} - 1 - iy\mathbf{1}(y \in (-1, 1)) \right) \nu(dy), \quad \text{for all } s \in \mathbb{R}.$$

**Proof** For all sequences  $(t_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subseteq (0, \infty)$  with  $\lim_{n \to \infty} t_n = 0$  it holds

$$\eta(s) = \left(e^{t\eta(s)}\right)'\Big|_{t=0} = \lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{e^{t_n \eta(s)} - 1}{t_n} = \lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{\varphi_{X(t_n)}(s) - 1}{t_n},$$
(4.2.1)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Polish space is a complete separable metric space.

since  $\eta : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{C}$  is continuous. The latter convergence is even uniform in  $s \in [-s_0, s_0]$  for any  $s_0 > 0$ , since Taylor's theorem yields

$$\begin{split} \lim_{n \to \infty} \left| \eta(s) - \frac{e^{t_n \eta(s)} - 1}{t_n} \right| &= \lim_{n \to \infty} \left| \eta(s) - \frac{1}{t_n} \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(t_n \eta(s))^k}{k!} \right| \\ &= \lim_{n \to \infty} \left| \frac{1}{t_n} \sum_{k=2}^{\infty} \frac{(t_n \eta(s))^k}{(k+1)!} \right| \\ &= \lim_{n \to \infty} \left| \eta(s) \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(t_n \eta(s))^{k-1}}{(k+1)!} \right| \\ &= \lim_{n \to \infty} \left| \eta^2(s) t_n \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(t_n \eta(s))^{k-1}}{(k+1)!} \right| \\ &\leq \lim_{n \to \infty} M^2 t_n \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{|t_n M|^{k-1}}{(k+1)!} \text{ (where } M := \sup_{s \in [-s_0, s_0]} |\eta(s)| < \infty) \\ &= \lim_{n \to \infty} M^2 t_n \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{|t_n M|^{k-1}}{(k-1)!} \frac{1}{k(k+1)} \\ &\leq \lim_{n \to \infty} M^2 t_n \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{|t_n M|^{k-1}}{(k-1)!} \\ &= \lim_{n \to \infty} M^2 t_n e^{|t_n M|} \\ &= 0. \end{split}$$

Now let  $t_n = \frac{1}{n}$  and  $\mathsf{P}_n$  be the distribution of  $X(\frac{1}{n})$ . Hence it follows that

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} n \int_{\mathbb{R}} (e^{isy} - 1) \mathsf{P}_n(ds) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{\varphi_{X(\frac{1}{n})}(s) - 1}{\frac{1}{n}} = \eta(s), \tag{4.2.2}$$
$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \int_{\mathbb{R}} n \int_{-s_0}^{s_0} \left( e^{isy} - 1 \right) ds \, \mathsf{P}_n(dy) = \int_{-s_0}^{s_0} \eta(s) ds.$$

Representation (4.2.2) means that the distribution of X(1) is approximated by the distribution of a compound Poisson random variable with intensity n and marks  $\stackrel{d}{=} X(1/n)$ . Consequently

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} n \int_{\mathbb{R}} \underbrace{\left(1 - \frac{\sin(s_0 y)}{s_0 y}\right)}_{\geq 0, \text{ for all } s_0 y} \mathsf{P}_n(dy) = \lim_{n \to \infty} n \int_{\mathbb{R}} -\frac{1}{2s_0} \int_{-s_0}^{s_0} \left(e^{isy} - 1\right) ds \mathsf{P}_n(dy) = -\frac{1}{2s_0} \int_{-s_0}^{s_0} \eta(s) ds \mathsf{P}_n(dy) \mathsf{P}_n(dy) = -\frac{1}{2s_0} \int_{-s_0}^{s_0} \eta(s) ds \mathsf{P}_n(dy) \mathsf{P}$$

Since  $\eta : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{C}$  is continuous with  $\eta(0) = 0$ , it follows from the mean value theorem that for all  $\varepsilon > 0$  it exists  $\delta_0 > 0$  such that for all  $s_0 \in (0, \delta_0)$ ,  $\left| -\frac{1}{2s_0} \int_{-s_0}^{s_0} \eta(s) ds \right| < \varepsilon$ . Since  $1 - \frac{\sin(s_0 y)}{s_0 y} \ge \frac{1}{2}$  for  $|s_0 y| \ge 2$ , it holds that for all  $\varepsilon > 0$  there exist  $s_0 > 0$  such that

$$\limsup_{n \to \infty} \frac{n}{2} \int_{\left\{y: |y| \ge \frac{2}{s_0}\right\}} \mathsf{P}_n(dy) \le \limsup_{n \to \infty} n \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(1 - \frac{\sin(s_0 y)}{s_0 y}\right) \mathsf{P}_n(dy) < \varepsilon.$$

Hence for all  $\varepsilon > 0$  there exist  $s_0 > 0$ ,  $n_0 > 0$  such that

$$n \int_{\left\{y:|y|\geq \frac{2}{s_0}\right\}} \mathsf{P}_n(dy) \leq 4\varepsilon \quad \text{for all } n \geq n_0.$$

Decreasing  $s_0$  gives

$$n \int_{\left\{y:|y| \ge \frac{2}{s_0}
ight\}} \mathsf{P}_n(dy) \le 4\varepsilon \quad \text{for all } n \ge 1.$$

Since  $\frac{y^2}{1+y^2} \le c\left(1 - \frac{\sin y}{y}\right)$  for all  $y \ne 0$  and a c > 0, it follows that

$$\sup_{n \ge 1} n \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{y^2}{1+y^2} \mathsf{P}_n(dy) \le c' \quad \text{for a } c' < \infty.$$

Let now  $\mu_n : \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}) \to [0, \infty)$  be defined as

$$\mu_n(B) = n \int_B \frac{y^2}{1+y^2} \mathsf{P}_n(dy) \quad \text{for all } B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}).$$

It follows that  $\{\mu_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  is uniformly bounded,  $\sup_{n\geq 1}\mu_n(\mathbb{R}) \leq c'$ . Furthermore it holds  $\frac{y^2}{1+y^2} \leq 1$ ,  $\sup_{n\geq 1}\mu_n\left(\left\{y: |y|>\frac{2}{s_0}\right\}\right) \leq 4\varepsilon$  and  $\{\mu_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  is tight. By Lemma 4.2.1 it is relatively compact, i.e., there exists  $\{\mu_{n_k}\}_{k\in\mathbb{N}}$  such that

$$\lim_{k \to \infty} \int_{\mathbb{R}} f(y) \mu_{n_k}(dy) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} f(y) \mu(dy)$$

for a finite measure  $\mu$  and all f continuous and bounded. Let for  $s \in \mathbb{R}$  the function  $f_s : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{C}$  be defined as

$$f_s(y) = \begin{cases} (e^{isy} - 1 - is\sin(y)) \frac{1+y^2}{y^2}, & y \neq 0, \\ -\frac{s^2}{2}, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Obviously  $f_s$  is bounded and continuous and

$$\begin{split} \eta(s) &= \lim_{n \to \infty} n \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left( e^{isy} - 1 \right) \mathsf{P}_n(dy) \\ &= \lim_{n \to \infty} \left( \int_{\mathbb{R}} f_s(y) \mu_n(dy) + isn \int_{\mathbb{R}} \sin y \mathsf{P}_n(dy) \right) \\ &= \lim_{k \to \infty} \left( \int_{\mathbb{R}} f_s(y) \mu_{n_k}(dy) + isn_k \int_{\mathbb{R}} \sin y \mathsf{P}_{n_k}(dy) \right) \\ &= \int_{\mathbb{R}} f_s(y) \mu(dy) + \lim_{k \to \infty} isn_k \int_{\mathbb{R}} \sin y \mathsf{P}_{n_k}(dy). \end{split}$$

Then

$$\eta(s) = ia's - \frac{bs^2}{2} + \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left( e^{isy} - 1 - is\sin y \right) \nu(dy)$$

for all  $s \in \mathbb{R}$  where  $a' = \lim_{k \to \infty} n_k \int_{\mathbb{R}} \sin y \mathsf{P}_{n_k}(dy) < \infty, \ b = \mu(\{0\}) \text{ and } \nu : \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}) \to [0, \infty)$ such that

$$\nu(dy) = \begin{cases} \frac{1+y^2}{y^2}\mu(dy), & y \neq 0, \\ 0, & y = 0. \end{cases}$$

The limit in the expression for a' exists as an imaginary part of (4.2.2). It holds

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}} |y\mathbf{1}(y \in (-1,1)) - \sin y| \,\nu(dy) < \infty$$

60

4 Lévy Processes

because  $\mu$  is finite and

$$|y\mathbf{1}(y \in (-1,1)) - \sin y| \frac{1+y^2}{y^2} < c'' \text{ for all } y \neq 0 \text{ and a } c'' > 0.$$

Hence it follows that

$$\eta(s) = ias - \frac{bs^2}{2} + \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left( e^{isy} - 1 - isy \mathbb{1} \left( y \in (-1, 1) \right) \right) \nu(dy), \quad \text{for all } s \in \mathbb{R}$$

with

$$a = a' + \int_{\mathbb{R}} (y \mathbf{1}(y \in (-1, 1)) - \sin y) \nu(dy).$$

#### Remark 4.2.2

It follows from the last part of the proof of Theorem 4.2.2 that the Lévy-Kchintchine representation (4.1.4) rewrites as

$$\varphi(s) = \exp\left\{ia_0s - \frac{bs^2}{2} + \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(e^{isy} - 1 - is \cdot c(y)\right) \nu(dy)\right\} \quad \text{for all } s \in \mathbb{R},$$

where  $c : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$  is any measurable function such that  $c(y) = y + o(y^2), |y| \to 0, c(y) = O(1), |y| \to \infty$ , and  $a_0 = a + \int_{\mathbb{R}} (c(y) - y\mathbf{1}(y \in [-1, 1])) \nu(dy)$ . For instance, one may choose c(y) to be  $c(y) = \sin y, \frac{y}{1+y^2}$ , etc.

## 4.3 Examples

In what follows it is enough to look at the distribution of X(1) by Theorem 4.2.1.

1. Wiener process

 $\overline{W(1)} \sim \mathcal{N}(0,1), \ \varphi_{W(1)}(s) = e^{-\frac{s^2}{2}} \text{ and hence follows } (a,b,\nu) = (0,1,0).$ Let  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a Wiener process with drift  $\mu$ , i.e.  $X(t) = \mu t + \sigma W(t),$  $W = \{W(t), t \ge 0\}$  – Brownian motion. It follows  $(a,b,\nu) = (\mu,\sigma^2,0)$  since

$$\varphi_{X(1)}(s) = \mathsf{E}e^{isX(1)} = \mathsf{E}e^{(\mu + \sigma W(1))is} = e^{\mu is}\varphi_{W(1)}(\sigma s) = e^{is\mu - \sigma^2 \frac{s^2}{2}}, \quad s \in \mathbb{R}$$

2. Compound Poisson process with parameters  $(\lambda, \mathsf{P}_U)$ . Let  $X(t) = \sum_{i=1}^{N(t)} U_i$ , for  $N(t) \sim \operatorname{Pois}(\lambda t)$ ,  $t \ge 0$ , and  $U_i$  i.i.d.  $\sim \mathsf{P}_U$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_{X(1)}(s) &= \exp\left\{\lambda \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(e^{isx} - 1\right) \mathsf{P}_{U}(dx)\right\} \\ &= \exp\left\{\lambda is \int_{\mathbb{R}} x \mathbf{1}(x \in [-1, 1]) \mathsf{P}_{U}(dx) + \lambda \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(e^{isx} - 1 - isx \mathbf{1}(x \in [-1, 1])\right) \mathsf{P}_{U}(dx)\right\} \\ &= \exp\left\{\lambda is \int_{-1}^{1} x \mathsf{P}_{U}(dx) + \lambda \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(e^{isx} - 1 - isx \mathbf{1}(x \in [-1, 1])\right) \mathsf{P}_{U}(dx)\right\}, \quad s \in \mathbb{R}. \end{aligned}$$

Hence it follows  $(a, b, \nu) = \left(\lambda \int_{-1}^{1} x \mathsf{P}_U(dx), 0, \lambda \mathsf{P}_U\right)$ , where  $\lambda \mathsf{P}_U$  is a finite measure on  $\mathbb{R}$ .

### 3. Process of Gauss-Poisson type

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be given by  $X(t) = X_1(t) + X_2(t), t \ge 0$ , where  $X_1 = \{X_1(t), t \ge 0\}$ and  $X_2 = \{X_2(t), t \ge 0\}$  are independent processes such that  $X_1$  is a Wiener process with drift  $\mu$  and variance  $\sigma^2$ , and  $X_2$  is a Compound Poisson process with parameters  $\lambda, \mathsf{P}_U$ . Then

$$\varphi_{X(t)}(s) = \varphi_{X_1(t)}(s)\varphi_{X_2(t)}(s) = \exp\left(is\mu - \frac{\sigma^2 s^2}{2} + \lambda \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(e^{isx} - 1\right) P_U(dx)\right)$$
$$= \exp\left\{is\left(\mu + \lambda \int_{-1}^1 x \mathsf{P}_U(dx)\right) - \frac{\sigma^2 s^2}{2} + \int_{\mathbb{R}} \lambda \left(e^{isx} - 1 - isx1(x \in [-1, 1])\right) \mathsf{P}_U(dx)\right\}, \quad s \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Hence it follows that  $(a, b, \nu) = \left(\mu + \lambda \int_{-1}^{1} x \mathsf{P}_{U}(dx), \sigma^{2}, \lambda \mathsf{P}_{U}\right).$ 

4. Stable Lévy process

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a Lévy process with  $X(1) \sim \alpha$ -stable distribution,  $\alpha \in (0, 2]$ . To introduce  $\alpha$ -stable laws, let us begin with an example.

If X = W (Wiener process) then  $X(1) \sim \mathcal{N}(0, 1)$ . Let  $Y, Y_1, \ldots, Y_n$  be i.i.d.  $\mathcal{N}(\mu, \sigma^2)$ -distributed random variables. Since the normal distribution is stable w.r.t. convolution it holds

$$Y_1 + \ldots + Y_n \sim \mathcal{N}(n\mu, n\sigma^2) \stackrel{d}{=} \sqrt{nY} + n\mu - \sqrt{n\mu}$$
$$= \sqrt{nY} + \mu \left(n - \sqrt{n}\right)$$
$$= n^{\frac{1}{2}}Y + \mu \left(n - n^{\frac{1}{2}}\right)$$
$$= n^{\frac{1}{\alpha}}Y + \mu \left(n - n^{\frac{1}{\alpha}}\right), \quad \alpha = 2$$

## Definition 4.3.1

The distribution of a random variable Y is called  $\alpha$ -stable if for all  $n \ge 2$  there exist deterministic  $c_n > 0$  and  $d_n$  such that

$$Y_1 + \ldots + Y_n \stackrel{d}{=} c_n Y + d_n,$$

where  $Y_1, \ldots, Y_n$  are independent copies of Y. The constant  $\alpha \in (0, 2]$  is called *index of stability*. Moreover, one can show that

$$c_n = n^{1/\alpha}, \quad d_n = \begin{cases} \mu \left(n - n^{\frac{1}{\alpha}}\right), & \alpha \neq 1, \\ \mu n \log n & , & \alpha = 1, \end{cases}$$

for some  $\mu \in \mathbb{R}$ , cf. [23].

**Example 4.3.1** •  $\alpha = 2$ : *Normal distribution*, with any mean and any variance.

•  $\alpha = 1$ : Cauchy distribution with parameters  $(\mu, \sigma^2)$ . The density:

$$f_Y(x) = \frac{\sigma}{\pi\left(\left(x-\mu\right)^2 + \sigma^2\right)}, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}$$

It holds  $\mathsf{E}Y^2 = \infty$ ,  $\mathsf{E}Y$  does not exist.

•  $\alpha = \frac{1}{2}$ : Lévy distribution with parameters  $(\mu, \sigma^2)$ . The density:

$$f_Y(x) = \begin{cases} \left(\frac{\sigma}{2\pi}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \frac{1}{(x-\mu)^{\frac{3}{2}}} \exp\left\{-\frac{\sigma}{2(x-\mu)}\right\}, & x > \mu, \\ 0 & , \text{ otherwise} \end{cases}$$

These examples are the only examples of  $\alpha$ -stable distributions where an explicit form of the density is available. For other  $\alpha \in (0, 2)$ ,  $\alpha \neq \frac{1}{2}$ , 1, the  $\alpha$ -stable distribution is introduced through its characteristic function.

#### Definition 4.3.2

The distribution of a random variable is called *symmetric*, if  $Y \stackrel{d}{=} -Y$ .

If Y has a symmetric  $\alpha$ -stable distribution,  $\alpha \in (0, 2]$ , then for some c > 0

$$\varphi_Y(s) = \exp\left\{-c \left|s\right|^{\alpha}\right\}, \ s \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Indeed, it follows from the stability of Y that

$$(\varphi_Y(s))^n = e^{id_n s} \varphi_Y\left(n^{\frac{1}{\alpha}}s\right), \quad s \in \mathbb{R}.$$

It follows that  $d_n = 0$ , since  $\varphi_{-Y}(s) = \varphi_Y(s) = \varphi_Y(-s)$  and hence  $e^{id_n s} = e^{-id_n s}$ ,  $s \in \mathbb{R}$  which can hold only if  $d_n = 0$ . The rest is left as an exercise.

Lemma 4.3.1 (Lévy-Khintchine representation of the cf. of a stable distribution): Any  $\alpha$ -stable law is infinitely divisible with the Lévy triplet  $(a, b, \nu)$ , where  $a \in \mathbb{R}$  is arbitrary,

$$b = \begin{cases} \sigma^2, & \alpha = 2, \\ 0, & 0 < \alpha < 2 \end{cases}$$

and

$$\nu(dx) = \begin{cases} 0, & \alpha = 2, \\ \frac{c_1}{x^{1+\alpha}} \mathbf{1}(x \ge 0) dx + \frac{c_2}{|x|^{1+\alpha}} \mathbf{1}(x < 0) dx, & 0 < \alpha < 2, \ c_1, \ c_2 \ge 0: \ c_1 + c_2 > 0 \end{cases}$$

See the proof in [23, Theorem B.1].

**Exercise:** Prove that for  $\alpha$ -stable symmetric random variable Y it holds

$$\mathsf{P}\left(|Y| \ge x\right) \underset{x \to \infty}{\sim} \begin{cases} \sqrt{\frac{2\sigma^2}{\pi x}} e^{-\frac{x^2}{2\sigma^2}}, & \alpha = 2, a = 0, \\ \frac{c}{x^{\alpha}}, & 0 < \alpha < 2, a = 0. \end{cases}$$

In general holds: If Y is  $\alpha$ -stable,  $\alpha \in (0, 2]$ , then  $\mathsf{E}|Y|^p < \infty$ , 0 .

#### Definition 4.3.3

The Lévy process  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  is called *stable* if X(1) has an  $\alpha$ -stable distribution,  $\alpha \in (0, 2]$ . For  $\alpha = 2$ , a stable Lévy process is simply the Brownian motion with drift.

## 4.3.1 Subordinators

#### Definition 4.3.4

A Lévy process  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  is called *subordinator*, if for all  $0 < t_1 < t_2, X(t_1) \le X(t_2)$ a.s. Since

$$X(0) = 0$$
 a.s.  $\Rightarrow$   $X(t) \ge 0$ ,  $t \ge 0$ , a.s.

This class of subordinators is important since one can easily introduce  $\int_a^b g(t) dX(t)$  as a Lebesgue-Stieltjes integral.

#### Theorem 4.3.1

The Lévy process X = X(t),  $t \ge 0$  is a subordinator if and only if the Lévy-Khintchine representation can be expressed in the form

$$\varphi_{X(1)}(s) = \exp\left\{ias + \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(e^{isx} - 1\right)\nu(dx)\right\}, \quad s \in \mathbb{R},$$
(4.3.1)

where  $a \in [0, \infty)$  and  $\nu$  is the Lévy measure, with

$$\nu((-\infty, 0)) = 0, \quad \int_0^\infty \min\{1, y\} \, \nu(dy) < \infty$$

## **Proof** Sufficiency

It has to be shown that  $X(t_2) \ge X(t_1)$  a.s., if  $t_2 \ge t_1 \ge 0$ . First of all we show that  $X(1) \ge 0$  a.s.. If  $\nu \equiv 0$ , then  $X(1) = a \ge 0$  a.s., hence

$$\varphi_{X(t)}(s) = (\varphi_{X(1)}(s))^t = e^{iats}, \quad s \in \mathbb{R},$$

X(t) = at a.s. Therefore it follows that  $X(t) \uparrow$  and X is a subordinator. If  $\nu([0,\infty)) > 0$  then there exists N > 0 such that for all  $n \ge N$  it holds  $0 < \nu\left(\left[\frac{1}{n},\infty\right)\right) < \infty$ . It follows

$$\varphi_{X(1)}(s) = \exp\left\{ias + \lim_{n \to \infty} \int_{\frac{1}{n}}^{\infty} \left(e^{isx} - 1\right)\nu(dx)\right\} = e^{ias} \lim_{n \to \infty} \varphi_n(s), \quad s \in \mathbb{R},$$

where  $\varphi_n(s) = \exp\left(\int_{\frac{1}{n}}^{\infty} (e^{isx} - 1) \nu(dx)\right)$  is the characteristic function of a compound Poisson process distribution with parameters  $\left(\nu\left(\left[\frac{1}{n},\infty\right)\right), \frac{\nu\left(\cdot\cap\left[\frac{1}{n},\infty\right)\right)}{\nu\left(\left[\frac{1}{n},\infty\right)\right)}\right)$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Let  $Z_n$  be the random variable with characteristic function  $\varphi_n$ . It holds:  $Z_n = \sum_{i=1}^{N_n} U_i, N_n \sim \operatorname{Pois}\left(\nu\left(\left[\frac{1}{n},\infty\right)\right)\right), U_i \sim \frac{\nu(\cdot\cap\left[\frac{1}{n},\infty\right))}{\nu(\left[\frac{1}{n},\infty\right))};$ hence follows  $Z_n \geq 0$  a.s. and  $X(1) \stackrel{d}{=} \underbrace{a}_{\geq 0} + \underbrace{\lim Z_n}_{>0} \geq 0$  a.s.. Since X is a Lévy process, it

holds

$$X(1) = X\left(\frac{1}{n}\right) + \left(X\left(\frac{2}{n}\right) - X\left(\frac{1}{n}\right)\right) + \ldots + \left(X\left(\frac{n}{n}\right) - X\left(\frac{n-1}{n}\right)\right),$$

where, because of stationarity and independence of the increments,  $X\left(\frac{k}{n}\right) - X\left(\frac{k-1}{n}\right) \stackrel{a.s.}{\geq} 0$  for  $1 \leq k \leq n$  for all n. Hence  $X(q_2) - X(q_1) \geq 0$  a.s. for all  $q_1, q_2 \in \mathbb{Q}, q_2 \geq q_1 \geq 0$ . Now

4 Lévy Processes

let  $t_1, t_2 \in \mathbb{R}$  such that  $0 \leq t_1 \leq t_2$ . Let  $\left\{q_1^{(n)}, q_2^{(n)}\right\}$  be sequences of numbers from  $\mathbb{Q}$  with  $q_1^{(n)} \leq q_2^{(n)}$  such that  $q_1^{(n)} \downarrow t_1, q_2^{(n)} \uparrow t_2, n \to \infty$ . For  $\varepsilon > 0$ 

$$\mathsf{P}(X(t_{2}) - X(t_{1}) < -\varepsilon) = \mathsf{P}\left(X(t_{2}) - X\left(q_{2}^{(n)}\right) + \underbrace{X\left(q_{2}^{(n)}\right) - X\left(q_{1}^{(n)}\right)}_{\geq 0} + X\left(q_{1}^{(n)}\right) - X(t_{1}) < -\varepsilon\right)$$
  
 
$$\leq \mathsf{P}\left(X(t_{2}) - X\left(q_{2}^{(n)}\right) + X\left(q_{1}^{(n)}\right) - X(t_{1}) < -\varepsilon\right)$$
  
 
$$\leq \mathsf{P}\left(X(t_{2}) - X\left(q_{2}^{(n)}\right) < -\frac{\varepsilon}{2}\right) + \mathsf{P}\left(X\left(q_{1}^{(n)}\right) - X(t_{1}) \le -\frac{\varepsilon}{2}\right) \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} 0,$$

since X is stochastically continuous. Then

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{P}\left(X(t_2) - X(t_1) < -\varepsilon\right) &= 0 \quad \text{for all } \varepsilon > 0 \text{ and} \\ \mathsf{P}\left(X(t_2) - X(t_1) < 0\right) &= \lim_{\varepsilon \to +0} \mathsf{P}\left(X(t_2) - X(t_1) < -\varepsilon\right) = 0 \\ \Rightarrow X(t_2) \geq X(t_1) \quad \text{a.s.} \end{split}$$

Necessity

Let X be a Lévy process, which is a subordinator. It has to be shown that  $\varphi_{X(1)}(\cdot)$  has the form (4.3.1).

After the Lévy-Khintchine representation for X(1) it holds that

$$\varphi_{X(1)}(s) = \exp\left\{ias - \frac{b^2 s^2}{2} + \int_0^\infty \left(e^{isx} - 1 - isx\mathbf{1}(x \in [-1, 1])\right)\nu(dx)\right\}, \quad s \in \mathbb{R}.$$

The measure  $\nu$  is concentrated on  $[0, \infty)$ , since  $X(t) \stackrel{a.s.}{\geq} 0$  for all  $t \geq 0$  and from the proof of Theorem 4.2.2  $\nu((-\infty, 0)) = 0$  can be chosen. Since

$$\varphi_{X(1)}(s) = \underbrace{\exp\left\{ias - \frac{b^2 s^2}{2}\right\}}_{:=\varphi_{Y_1(s)}} \underbrace{\exp\left\{\int_0^\infty \left(e^{isx} - 1 - isx1\left(x \in [-1,1]\right)\right)\nu(dx)\right\}}_{:=\varphi_{Y_2(s)}},$$

it follows that  $X(1) = Y_1 + Y_2$ , where  $Y_1$  and  $Y_2$  are independent,  $Y_1 \sim \mathcal{N}(a, b^2)$  and therefore b = 0. (Otherwise  $Y_1$  could attain negative values and consequently X(1) could attain negative values as well.) For all  $\varepsilon \in (0, 1)$ 

$$\varphi_{X(1)}(s) = \exp\left\{is\left(a - \int_{\varepsilon}^{1} x\nu(dx)\right) + \int_{0}^{\varepsilon} \left(e^{isx} - 1 - isx\right)\nu(dx) + \int_{\varepsilon}^{\infty} \left(e^{isx} - 1\right)\nu(dx)\right\}.$$

It has to be shown that for  $\varepsilon \to 0$  it holds  $\int_{\varepsilon}^{\infty} (e^{isx} - 1) \nu(dx) \to \int_{0}^{\infty} (e^{isx} - 1) \nu(dx) < \infty$  with  $\int_{0}^{\infty} \min\{x, 1\} \nu(dx) < \infty$ .  $\varphi_{X(1)}(s) = \exp\left\{is\left(a - \int_{\varepsilon}^{1} x\nu(dx)\right)\right\} \varphi_{Z_{1}}(s)\varphi_{Z_{2}}(s)$ , where  $Z_{1}$  and  $Z_{2}$  are independent,  $\varphi_{Z_{1}}(s) = \exp\left\{\int_{0}^{\varepsilon} (e^{isx} - 1 - isx) \nu(dx)\right\}$ ,  $\varphi_{Z_{2}}(s) = \exp\left\{\int_{\varepsilon}^{\infty} (e^{isx} - 1) \nu(dx)\right\}$ ,  $s \in \mathbb{R}$ . Then  $X(1) \stackrel{d}{=} a - \int_{\varepsilon}^{1} x\nu(dx) + Z_{1} + Z_{2}$ . There exist  $\varphi_{Z_{1}}^{(2)}(0) = \frac{-\mathsf{E}Z_{1}^{2}}{2} < \infty$ ,  $\varphi_{Z_{1}}^{(1)}(0) = 0 = i\mathsf{E}Z_{1}$  and it therefore follows that  $\mathsf{E}Z_{1} = 0$  and  $\mathsf{P}(Z_{1} \leq 0) > 0$ . On the

other hand,  $Z_2$  has a compound Poisson distribution with parameters  $\left(\nu\left([\varepsilon,\infty)\right), \frac{\nu(\cdot\cap[\varepsilon,+\infty])}{\nu([\varepsilon,+\infty))}\right)$ ,  $\varepsilon \in (0,1)$ .

$$\Rightarrow \mathsf{P}(Z_2 \le 0) > 0, \text{ since } \mathsf{P}(Z_2 = 0) > 0.$$
  
$$\Rightarrow \mathsf{P}(Z_1 + Z_2 \le 0) \ge \mathsf{P}(Z_1 \le 0, Z_2 \le 0) = \mathsf{P}(Z_1 \le 0) \mathsf{P}(Z_2 \le 0) > 0.$$

For X(1) to be positive it follows that  $a - \int_{\varepsilon}^{1} x \nu(dx) \ge 0$  for all  $\varepsilon \in (0, 1)$ . Hence  $a \ge 0$  and

$$\int_0^\infty \min\left\{x,1\right\}\nu(dx) < \infty.$$

Moreover, for  $\varepsilon \downarrow 0$  it holds  $Z_1 \xrightarrow{d} 0$  and consequently

$$\varphi_{X(1)}(s) = \exp\left\{is\left(a - \int_0^1 x\nu(dx)\right) + \int_0^\infty \left(e^{isx} - 1\right)\nu(dx)\right\}, \quad s \in \mathbb{R}.$$

## Example 4.3.2 ( $\alpha$ -stable subordinator):

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a subordinator with a = 0 and the Lévy measure

$$\nu(dx) = \begin{cases} \frac{\alpha}{\Gamma(1-\alpha)} \frac{1}{x^{1+\alpha}} dx, & x > 0, \\ 0, & x \le 0, \end{cases} \quad \alpha \in (0,1).$$

By Lemma 4.3.1 it follows that X is an  $\alpha$ -stable Lévy process. We show that  $\hat{l}_{X(t)}(s) = \mathsf{E}e^{-sX(t)} = e^{-ts^{\alpha}}$  for all  $s, t \geq 0$ .

$$\varphi_{X(t)}(s) = \left(\varphi_{X(1)}(s)\right)^t = \exp\left\{t\int_0^\infty \left(e^{isx} - 1\right)\frac{\alpha}{\Gamma(1-\alpha)}\frac{1}{x^{1+\alpha}}dx\right\}, \quad s \in \mathbb{R}.$$

It has to be shown that

$$u^{\alpha} = \frac{\alpha}{\Gamma(1-\alpha)} \int_0^{\infty} (1-e^{-ux}) \frac{dx}{x^{1+\alpha}}, \quad u \ge 0$$

This is enough since  $\varphi_{X(t)}(\cdot)$  can be continued analytically to  $\{z \in \mathbb{C} : \operatorname{Im} z \ge 0\}$ , i.e.  $\varphi_{X(t)}(iu) = \hat{l}_{X(t)}(u), u \ge 0$ . In fact, it holds that

$$\int_{0}^{\infty} (1 - e^{-ux}) \frac{dx}{x^{1+\alpha}} = \int_{0}^{\infty} u \int_{0}^{x} e^{-uy} dy x^{-1-\alpha} dx$$

$$\stackrel{\text{Fubini}}{=} \int_{0}^{\infty} \int_{y}^{\infty} u e^{-uy} x^{-1-\alpha} dx dy$$

$$= \int_{0}^{\infty} \int_{y}^{\infty} x^{-1-\alpha} dx u e^{-uy} dy$$

$$= \frac{u}{\alpha} \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-uy} y^{-\alpha} dy$$

$$\stackrel{\text{Subst.}}{=} \frac{u}{\alpha} \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-z} z^{-\alpha} \frac{1}{u^{-\alpha}} d\left(\frac{z}{u}\right)$$

$$= \frac{u^{\alpha}}{\alpha} \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-z} z^{(1-\alpha)-1} dz$$

$$= \frac{u^{\alpha}}{\alpha} \Gamma(1-\alpha)$$

and hence follows  $\hat{l}_{X(t)}(s) = e^{-ts^{\alpha}}, t, s \ge 0.$ 

### Theorem 4.3.2 (Monotone time substitution):

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a Lévy process and let  $\tau = \{\tau(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a subordinator, which are both defined on a probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$ . Let X and  $\tau$  be independent. Then  $Y = \{Y(t), t \ge 0\}$ , defined by  $Y(t) = X(\tau(t)), t \ge 0$ , is a Lévy process.

Without proof

## 4.4 Additional Exercises

#### Exercise 4.4.1

Let X be a random variable with distribution function F and characteristic function  $\varphi$ . Show that the following statements hold:

- a) If X is infinitely divisible, then it holds  $\varphi(t) \neq 0$  for all  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ . Hint: Show that  $\lim_{n\to\infty} |\varphi_n(s)|^2 = 1$  for all  $s \in \mathbb{R}$ , if  $\varphi(s) = (\varphi_n(s))^n$ . Note further that  $|\varphi_n(s)|^2$  is again a characteristic function and  $\lim_{n\to\infty} x^{\frac{1}{n}} = 1$  holds for x > 0.
- b) Give an example (with explanation) for a distribution, which is not infinitely divisible.

#### Exercise 4.4.2

Show that the sum of two independent Lévy processes is again a Lévy process, and state the corresponding Lévy characteristic.

## Exercise 4.4.3

Look at the following function  $\varphi : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{C}$  with

$$\varphi(t) = e^{\psi(t)}$$
, where  $\psi(t) = 2 \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} 2^{-k} (\cos(2^k t) - 1).$ 

Show that  $\varphi(t)$  is the characteristic function of an infinitely divisible distribution. *Hint: Look* at the Lévy-Khintchine representation with measure  $\nu(\{\pm 2^k\}) = 2^{-k}$ ,  $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

#### Exercise 4.4.4

Let the Lévy process  $\{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a Gamma process with parameters b, p > 0, that is, for every  $t \ge 0$  it holds  $X(t) \sim \Gamma(b, pt)$ . Show that  $\{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  is a subordinator with the Laplace exponent  $\xi(u) = \int_0^\infty (1 - e^{-uy})\nu(dy)$  with  $\nu(dy) = py^{-1}e^{-by}dy$ , y > 0. (The Laplace exponent of  $\{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  is the function  $\xi : [0, \infty) \to [0, \infty)$ , for which holds that  $\mathsf{E}e^{-uX(t)} = e^{-t\xi(u)}$  for arbitrary  $t, u \ge 0$ )

#### Exercise 4.4.5

Let  $\{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a Lévy process with Lévy exponent  $\eta$  and  $\{\tau(s), s \ge 0\}$  be an independent subordinator with Lévy exponent  $\gamma$ . The stochastic process Y be defined as  $Y = \{X(\tau(s)), s \ge 0\}$ . Show that Y is a Lévy process with characteristic Lévy exponent  $\gamma(-i\eta(\cdot))$ , i.e.,

$$\mathsf{E}\left(e^{i\theta Y(s)}\right) = e^{\gamma(-i\eta(\theta))s}, \quad \theta \in \mathbb{R}.$$

**Hint**: Since  $\tau$  is a process with non-negative values, it holds  $\mathsf{E}e^{i\theta\tau(s)} = e^{\gamma(\theta)s}$  for all  $\theta \in \{z \in \mathbb{C} : \operatorname{Im} z \geq 0\}$  through the analytical continuation of Theorem 4.1.3. In order to calculate the expectation for the characteristic function, the identity  $\mathsf{E}(X) = \mathsf{E}(\mathsf{E}(X|Y)) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{E}(X|Y = y)F_Y(dy)$  for two random variables X and Y can be used. In doing so, it should be conditioned on  $\tau(s)$ .

## Exercise 4.4.6

Let  $\{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a compound Poisson process with Lévy measure

$$\nu(dx) = \frac{\lambda\sqrt{2}}{\sigma\sqrt{\pi}}e^{-\frac{x^2}{2\sigma^2}}dx, \quad x \in \mathbb{R},$$

where  $\lambda, \sigma > 0$ . Show that  $\{\sigma W(N(t)), t \ge 0\}$  has the same finite-dimensional distributions as X, where  $\{N(s), s \ge 0\}$  is a Poisson process with intensity  $2\lambda$  and W is a standard Wiener process independent from N.

**Hint**: Use  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \cos(sy) e^{-\frac{y^2}{2a}} dy = \sqrt{2\pi a} \cdot e^{-\frac{as^2}{2}}$  for a > 0 and  $s \in \mathbb{R}$ .

## Exercise 4.4.7

Let W be a standard Wiener process and  $\tau$  an independent  $\frac{\alpha}{2}$ -stable subordinator, where  $\alpha \in (0, 2)$ . Show that  $\{W(\tau(s)), s \ge 0\}$  is an  $\alpha$ -stable Lévy process.

## Exercise 4.4.8

Show that the subordinator  $\tau$  with marginal density

$$f_{\tau(t)}(s) = \frac{t}{2\sqrt{\pi}} s^{-\frac{3}{2}} e^{-\frac{t^2}{4s}} \mathbb{1}\{s > 0\}$$

is a  $\frac{1}{2}$ -stable subordinator.

**Hint**: Differentiate the Laplace transform of  $\tau(t)$  and solve the differential equation.

# **5** Martingales

## 5.1 Basic Ideas

Let  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$  be a complete probability space.

Definition 5.1.1

Let  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \geq 0\}$  be a family of  $\sigma$ -algebras  $\mathcal{F}_t \subset \mathcal{F}$ . It is called

- 1. a filtration if  $\mathcal{F}_s \subseteq \mathcal{F}_t$ ,  $0 \leq s < t$ .
- 2. a complete filtration if it is a filtration such that  $\mathcal{F}_0$  (and therefore all  $\mathcal{F}_s$ , s > 0) contains all sets of zero probability.

Later on we will always assume that we have a complete filtration.

- 3. a right-continuous filtration if for all  $t \ge 0$   $\mathcal{F}_t = \bigcap_{s>t} \mathcal{F}_s$ .
- 4. a natural filtration for a stochastic process  $\{X(t), t \ge 0\}$ , if it is generated by the past of the process until time  $t \ge 0$ , i.e. for all  $t \ge 0$   $\mathcal{F}_t$  is the smallest  $\sigma$ -algebra which contains the sets  $\{\omega \in \Omega : (X(t_1), \ldots, X(t_n))^\top \in B\}$ , for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}, 0 \le t_1, \ldots, t_n \le t, B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ .

A random variable  $\tau : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}_+$  is called *stopping time (w.r.t. the filtration*  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \ge 0\}$ ), if for all  $t \ge 0$   $\{\omega \in \Omega : \tau(\omega) \le t\} \in \mathcal{F}_t$ .

If  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \geq 0\}$  is the natural filtration of a stochastic process  $\{X(t), t \geq 0\}$ , then  $\tau$  being a stopping time means that by looking at the past of the process X you can tell whether the moment  $\tau$  occurred.

## Lemma 5.1.1

Let  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \ge 0\}$  be a right-continuous filtration.  $\tau$  is a stopping time w.r.t.  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \ge 0\}$  if and only if  $\{\tau < t\} \in \mathcal{F}_t$  for all  $t \ge 0$ .

$$\{\omega \in \Omega : \tau(\omega) < t\} \in \mathcal{F}_t$$

 $\mathbf{Proof} \ ,, \Leftarrow ``$ 

Let  $\{\tau < t\} \in \mathcal{F}_t, t \ge 0$ . To show:  $\{\tau \le t\} \in \mathcal{F}_t$ . Since  $\{\tau \le t\} = \bigcap_{n=1}^{\infty} \{\tau < t + \frac{1}{n}\}$  for all  $\varepsilon > 0$  it follows  $\{\tau \le t\} \in \bigcap_{s>t} \mathcal{F}_s = \mathcal{F}_t$ . ,,  $\Rightarrow$  " To show:  $\{\tau \le t\} \in \mathcal{F}_t, t \ge 0 \Rightarrow \{\tau < t\} \in \mathcal{F}_t, t \ge 0$ .  $\{\tau < t\} = \bigcup_{s \in (0,t) \cap \mathbb{Q}} \{\tau \le t - s\} \in \bigcup_{s \in (0,t) \cap \mathbb{Q}} \mathcal{F}_{t-s} \subset \mathcal{F}_t$ .

## Definition 5.1.2

Let  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$  be a probability space,  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \geq 0\}$  a filtration  $(\mathcal{F}_t \subset \mathcal{F}, t \geq 0)$  and  $X = \{X(t), t \geq 0\}$  a stochastic process on  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$ . X is adapted w.r.t. the filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \geq 0\}$  if X(t) is  $\mathcal{F}_t$ -measurable for all  $t \geq 0$ , i.e. for all  $B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R})$   $\{X(t) \in B\} \in \mathcal{F}_t$ .

#### Definition 5.1.3

The time  $\tau_B = \inf\{t \ge 0 : X(t) \in B\}$  is called *first hitting time* of the set  $B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R})$  by the stochastic process  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  (also called: first passage time, first entrance time).
#### Theorem 5.1.1

Let  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \ge 0\}$  be a right-continuous filtration and  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  an adapted (w.r.t.  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \ge 0\}$ ) càdlàg process. For open  $B \subset \mathbb{R}, \tau_B$  is a stopping time. If B is closed then  $\tilde{\tau}_B = \inf\{t \ge 0 : X(t) \in B \text{ or } X(t-) \in B\}$  is a stopping time, where  $X(t-) = \lim_{s \uparrow t} X(s)$ .

**Proof** 1. Let  $B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R})$  be open. Because of Lemma 5.1.1 it is enough to show that  $\{\tau_B < t\} \in \mathcal{F}_t, t \ge 0$ . Because of right-continuity of the trajectories of X it holds:

$$\{\tau_B < t\} = \bigcup_{s \in \mathbb{Q} \cap [0,t)} \{X(s) \in B\} \in \bigcup_{s \in \mathbb{Q} \cap [0,t)} \mathcal{F}_s \subseteq \mathcal{F}_t, \text{ since } \mathcal{F}_s \subseteq \mathcal{F}_t, s < t.$$

2. Let  $B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R})$  be closed. For all  $\varepsilon > 0$  let  $B_{\varepsilon} = \{x \in \mathbb{R} : d(x, B) < \varepsilon\}$  be a parallel set of B, where  $d(x, B) = \inf_{y \in B} |x - y|$ .  $B_{\varepsilon}$  is open for all  $\varepsilon > 0$ .

$$\{\tilde{\tau}_B \leq t\} = \left(\bigcup_{s \in \mathbb{Q} \cap (0,t]} \{X(s) \in B\}\right) \cup \left(\bigcap_{n \geq 1} \bigcup_{s \in \mathbb{Q} \cap (0,t)} \{X(s) \in B_{\frac{1}{n}}\}\right) \in \mathcal{F}_t,$$

since X is adapted w.r.t.  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \geq 0\}$ .

#### Lemma 5.1.2

Let  $\tau_1, \tau_2$  be stopping times w.r.t. the filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \geq 0\}$ . Then  $\min\{\tau_1, \tau_2\}$ ,  $\max\{\tau_1, \tau_2\}$ ,  $\tau_1 + \tau_2$  and  $\alpha \tau_1, \alpha \geq 1$ , are stopping times (w.r.t.  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \geq 0\}$ ).

**Proof** For all  $t \ge 0$  it holds:

1.  $\{\min\{\tau_1, \tau_2\} \le t\} = \underbrace{\{\tau_1 \le t\}}_{\in \mathcal{F}_t} \cup \underbrace{\{\tau_2 \le t\}}_{\in \mathcal{F}_t} \in \mathcal{F}_t,$ 

2. 
$$\{\max\{\tau_1, \tau_2\} \le t\} = \{\tau_1 \le t\} \cap \{\tau_2 \le t\} \in \mathcal{F}_t,$$

3.  $\{\alpha \tau_1 \leq t\} = \{\tau_1 \leq \frac{t}{\alpha}\} \in \mathcal{F}_{\frac{t}{\alpha}} \subset \mathcal{F}_t, \text{ since } \frac{t}{\alpha} \leq t,$ 

$$\begin{aligned} 4. \ \left\{ \tau_1 + \tau_2 \leq t \right\}^c &= \left\{ \tau_1 + \tau_2 > t \right\} = \underbrace{\{\tau_1 > t\}}_{\in \mathcal{F}_t} \cup \underbrace{\{\tau_2 > t\}}_{\in \mathcal{F}_t} \cup \underbrace{\{\tau_1 \geq t, \tau_2 > 0\}}_{\in \mathcal{F}_t} \cup \underbrace{\{\tau_2 \geq t, \tau_1 > 0\}}_{\in \mathcal{F}_t} \cup \underbrace{\{\tau_2 \geq t, \tau_2 \geq t, \tau_1 > 0\}}_{\in \mathcal{F}_t} \cup \underbrace{\{\tau_2 \geq t, \tau_2 \geq t, \tau_2$$

#### 

#### Theorem 5.1.2

Let  $\tau$  be an a.s. finite stopping time w.r.t. the filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \geq 0\}$  on the probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$ , i.e.  $\mathsf{P}(\tau < \infty) = 1$ . Then there exists a sequence of discrete stopping times  $\{\tau_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ ,  $\tau_1 \geq \tau_2 \geq \tau_3 \geq \ldots$ , such that  $\tau_n \downarrow \tau$ ,  $n \to \infty$  a.s.

**Proof** For all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  let

$$\tau_n = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } \tau(\omega) = 0\\ \frac{k+1}{2^n}, & \text{if } \frac{k}{2^n} < \tau(\omega) \le \frac{k+1}{2^n}, & \text{for a } k \in \mathbb{N}_0 \end{cases}$$

For all  $t \ge 0$  and for all  $n \in \mathbb{N} \exists k \in \mathbb{N}_0 : \frac{k}{2^n} \le t < \frac{k+1}{2^n}$ , i.e. it holds  $\{\tau_n \le t\} = \{\tau_n \le \frac{k}{2^n}\} = \{\tau \le \frac{k}{2^n}\} \in \mathcal{F}_{\frac{k}{2^n}} \subset \mathcal{F}_t \Rightarrow \tau_n \text{ is a stopping time. Obviously } \tau_n \downarrow \tau, n \to \infty \text{ a.s.}$ 

#### Corollary 5.1.1

Let  $\tau$  be an a.s. finite stopping time w.r.t. the filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \geq 0\}$  and  $X = \{X(t), t \geq 0\}$  a càdlàg process on  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P}), \mathcal{F}_t \subset \mathcal{F}$  for all  $t \geq 0$ . Then  $X(\omega, \tau(\omega)), \omega \in \Omega$  is a random variable on  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$ .

**Proof** To show:  $X(\tau) : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}$  is measurable, i.e. for all  $B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R})$   $\{X(\tau) \in B\} \in \mathcal{F}$ . Let  $\tau_n \downarrow \tau, n \to \infty$  be as in Theorem 5.1.2. Since X is càdlàg, it holds that  $X(\tau_n) \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} X(\tau)$  a.s.. Then  $X(\tau)$  is  $\mathcal{F}$ -measurable as the limit of  $X(\tau_n)$  which are themselves  $\mathcal{F}$ -measurable. Indeed, for all  $B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R})$  it holds

$$\{X(\tau_n) \in B\} = \bigcup_{k=0}^{\infty} \left( \underbrace{\left\{\tau_n = \frac{k}{2^n}\right\}}_{\in \mathcal{F}} \cap \underbrace{\left\{X\left(\frac{k}{2^n}\right) \in B\right\}}_{\in \mathcal{F}}\right) \in \mathcal{F}$$

# 5.2 (Sub-, Super-)Martingales

The word "martingale" originates from the betting strategy named after citizens of french city Martignes who were famous in 18th century for their simplicity and stupidity. The strategy " à la martengalo" can be best explained in a pitch-and-toss game: a gambler with initial capital  $2^n$  Euro wins a stake if a coin comes up heads, and he looses his stake, otherwise. At the initial point of time, the gambler bets 1 Euro, and doubles his bet after each loss, till the first win. After each win, the next bet has to be 1 Euro again, and so forth. It is easy to see that if the win comes in  $m \leq n$  games, the gambler wins in total 1 Euro. Hence, this gamble strategy is simply a redistribution of the gain over m games. However, the probability of loss in this series of m games is  $(1/2)^m$ , thus a small number, but not zero. Is m > n then the gambler looses his whole capital. Hence, the strategy is very risky, since the gain of 1 Euro is opposed to the loss of  $2^n$  Euro. The expected gain in any number of games is here obviously zero.

#### Definition 5.2.1

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a stochastic process adapted w.r.t. to a filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \ge 0\}$ ,  $\mathcal{F}_t \subset \mathcal{F}, t \ge 0$ , on the probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P}), \mathsf{E}|X(t)| < \infty, t \ge 0$ . X is called *martingale*, resp. sub- or supermartingale, if  $\mathsf{E}(X(t) \mid \mathcal{F}_s) = X(s)$  a.s., resp.  $\mathsf{E}(X(t) \mid$ 

 $\mathcal{F}_s \geq X(s)$  a.s. or  $\mathsf{E}(X(t) \mid \mathcal{F}_s) \leq X(s)$  a.s. for all  $s, t \geq 0$  with  $t \geq s$ . For a martingale, it holds obviously  $\mathsf{E}(X(t)) = \mathsf{E}(X(s)) = \text{const}$  for all s, t; accordingly,  $\mathsf{E}(X(t)) \geq (\leq)\mathsf{E}(X(s))$  for s < t if X is a sub- or supermartingale.

Definition 5.2.1 means that the best (in  $L^2$ -sense) prediction of X(t), t > s on the basis of observations X(u),  $u \in [0, s]$ , is the actual last value X(s).

#### Definition 5.2.2

A discrete (sub-, super-) martingale w.r.t. a filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  is a sequence of random variables  $\{X_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  on a probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$  such that  $X_n$  is measurable w.r.t.  $\{\mathcal{F}_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  and  $\mathsf{E}(X_{n+1}|X_n) \stackrel{a.s.}{=} X_n (\stackrel{a.s.}{\geq} X_n, \stackrel{a.s.}{\leq} X_n)$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . A discrete stopping time w.r.t.  $\{\mathcal{F}_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  is a random variable  $\tau : \Omega \to \mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\}$ , such that  $\{\tau \leq n\} \in \mathcal{F}_n$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\}$ , where  $\mathcal{F}_{\infty} = \sigma\{\bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathcal{F}_n\}$ .

Very often martingales are constructed on the basis of a stochastic process  $Y = \{Y(t), t \ge 0\}$ as follows:  $X(t) = g(Y(t)) - \mathsf{E}g(Y(t))$  for some measurable function  $g : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ , or by  $X(t) = \frac{e^{iuY(t)}}{\varphi_{Y(t)}(u)}$ , for any fixed  $u \in \mathbb{R}$ .

#### Examples

1. Poisson process

Let  $Y = \{Y(t), t \ge 0\}$  be the homogeneous Poisson process with intensity  $\lambda > 0$ .  $\mathsf{E}Y(t) = \mathsf{Var} Y(t) = \lambda t$  since  $Y(t) \sim \mathsf{Pois}(\lambda t), t \ge 0$ .

a)  $X(t) = Y(t) - \lambda t$ ,  $t \ge 0 \Rightarrow X(t)$  is a martingale w.r.t. the natural filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_s, s \ge 0\}$ . Indeed, by stationarity and independence of increments of Y, it holds

$$E(X(t) | \mathcal{F}_s) = E(Y(t) - \lambda t - (Y(s) - \lambda s) + (Y(s) - \lambda s)) | \mathcal{F}_s)$$

$$= Y(s) - \lambda s + E(Y(t) - Y(s) - \lambda(t - s) | \mathcal{F}_s)$$

$$\stackrel{\text{ind.incr.}}{=} Y(s) - \lambda s + E(Y(t) - Y(s)) - \lambda(t - s)$$

$$\stackrel{\text{stat. incr.}}{=} Y(s) - \lambda s + \underbrace{E(Y(t - s))}_{=\lambda(t - s)} - \lambda(t - s)$$

$$= Y(s) - \lambda s = X(s) \text{ for any } s \leq t.$$

b)  $\tilde{X}(t) = X^2(t) - \lambda t, t \ge 0 \Rightarrow \tilde{X}(t)$  is a martingale w.r.t.  $\{\mathcal{F}_s, s \ge 0\}$ .

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{E}(\tilde{X}(t) \mid \mathcal{F}_s) &= \mathsf{E}(X^2(t) - \lambda t \mid \mathcal{F}_s) = \mathsf{E}((X(t) - X(s) + X(s))^2 - \lambda t \mid \mathcal{F}_s) \\ &= \mathsf{E}((X(t) - X(s))^2 + 2(X(t) - X(s))X(s) + X^2(s) - \lambda s - \lambda(t - s) \mid \mathcal{F}_s) \\ &= \tilde{X}(s) + \underbrace{\mathsf{E}(X(t) - X(s))^2}_{=\mathsf{Var}(Y(t) - Y(s)) = \lambda(t - s)} + 2X(s)\underbrace{\mathsf{E}(X(t) - X(s))}_{=0} - \lambda(t - s) \\ &= 0 \\ &\stackrel{a.s.}{=} \tilde{X}(s), \quad s \leq t. \end{split}$$

2. Compound Poisson process

Let  $Y(t) = \sum_{i=1}^{N(t)} U_i$ ,  $t \ge 0$ , where  $N = \{N(t), t \ge 0\}$  is a homogeneous Poisson process with intensity  $\lambda > 0$ ,  $U_i$  are independent identically distributed random variables,  $\mathsf{E}|U_i| < \infty$ ,  $\{U_i\}$  independent of N. Let  $X(t) = Y(t) - \mathsf{E}Y(t) = Y(t) - \lambda t \mathsf{E}U_1$ ,  $t \ge 0$ .

#### Exercise 5.2.1

Show that  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  is a martingale w.r.t. its natural filtration.

3. Wiener process

Let  $W = \{W(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a Wiener process,  $\{\mathcal{F}_s, s \ge 0\}$  be the natural filtration.

a)  $Y = \{Y(t), t \ge 0\}$ , where  $Y(t) := W^2(t) - \mathsf{E}W^2(t) = W^2(t) - t, t \ge 0$ , is a martingale w.r.t.  $\{\mathcal{F}_s, s \ge 0\}$ . Indeed, it holds

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{E}(Y(t) \mid \mathcal{F}_s) &= \mathsf{E}((W(t) - W(s) + W(s))^2 - s - (t - s) \mid \mathcal{F}_s) \\ &= \mathsf{E}((W(t) - W(s))^2 + 2W(s)(W(t) - W(s)) + W(s)^2 \mid \mathcal{F}_s) - s - (t - s) \\ &= \mathsf{E}((W(t) - W(s))^2) + 2W(s)\underbrace{\mathsf{E}(W(t) - W(s))}_{=0} + \mathsf{E}(W^2(s) \mid \mathcal{F}_s) - s - (t - s) \\ &= t - s + W^2(s) - s - (t - s) \\ &= W^2(s) - s = Y(s), \quad s \le t. \end{split}$$

b)  $\tilde{Y}(t) := e^{uW(t) - u^2 \frac{t}{2}}, t \ge 0$  and a fixed  $u \in \mathbb{R}$ .  $\mathsf{E}|\tilde{Y}(t)| = e^{-u^2 \frac{t}{2}} \mathsf{E} e^{uW(t)} = e^{-u^2 \frac{t}{2}} e^{u^2 \frac{t}{2}} = 1 < \infty$ . We show that  $\tilde{Y} = \{\tilde{Y}(t), t \ge 0\}$  is a martingale w.r.t.  $\{\mathcal{F}_s, s \geq 0\}$ .

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{E}(\tilde{Y}(t) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}) &= \mathsf{E}(e^{u(W(t) - W(s) + W(s)) - u^{2} \frac{s}{2} - u^{2} \frac{(t-s)}{2}} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}) \\ &= \underbrace{e^{-u^{2} \frac{s}{2}} e^{uW(s)}}_{=\tilde{Y}(s)} e^{-u^{2} \frac{(t-s)}{2}} \underbrace{\mathsf{E}(e^{u(W(t) - W(s))} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s})}_{=\mathsf{E}(e^{uW(t-s)}) = e^{u^{2} \frac{(t-s)}{2}}} \\ &= \tilde{Y}(s) e^{-u^{2} \frac{(t-s)}{2}} e^{u^{2} \frac{(t-s)}{2}} = \tilde{Y}(s), \quad s \leq t. \end{split}$$

4. Lévy martingale

Let X be a random variable (on  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$ ) with  $\mathsf{E}|X| < \infty$ . Let  $\{\mathcal{F}_s, s \ge 0\}$  be a filtration on  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$ . Construct  $Y(t) = \mathsf{E}(X \mid \mathcal{F}_t), t \ge 0$ .  $Y = \{Y(t), t \ge 0\}$  is a martingale. Indeed,  $\mathsf{E}|Y(t)| = \mathsf{E}|\mathsf{E}(X \mid \mathcal{F}_t)| \le \mathsf{E}(\mathsf{E}(|X| \mid \mathcal{F}_t)) = \mathsf{E}|X| < \infty, t \ge 0.$  $\mathsf{E}(Y(t) \mid \mathcal{F}_s) = \mathsf{E}(\mathsf{E}(X \mid \mathcal{F}_t) \mid \mathcal{F}_s) \stackrel{a.s.}{=} \mathsf{E}(X \mid \mathcal{F}_s) = Y(s), s \le t \text{ since } \mathcal{F}_s \subseteq \mathcal{F}_t.$ 

Remark:

If  $\{Y(n) \mid n = 1, ..., N\}$ , where  $N \in \mathbb{N}$ , is a martingale, then it is Lévy since Y(n) = $\mathsf{E}(Y(N) \mid \mathcal{F}_n)$  for all n = 1, ..., N, i.e. X := Y(N). However, the latter is not always possible for processes of the form  $\{Y(n) \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\}$  or  $\{Y(t) \mid t \ge 0\}$ .

5. Lévy processes

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a Lévy process with Lévy exponent  $\eta$  and natural filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_s, s \ge 0\}.$ 

- a) If  $\mathsf{E}|X(1)| < \infty$ , define  $Y(t) = X(t) \underbrace{t\mathsf{E}X(1)}_{=\mathsf{E}X(t)}, t \ge 0$ . As in the previous cases it can be shown that  $Y = \{Y(t), t \ge 0\}$  is martingale w.r.t. the filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_s, s \ge 0\}$ (Compare Examples 1 and 2).
- b) In the general case one can use the combination from Example 3 b) normalize  $e^{iuX(t)}$  by the characteristic function of X(t), i.e. let  $Y(t) = \frac{e^{iuX(t)}}{\varphi_{X(t)}^{(u)}} = \frac{e^{iuX(t)}}{e^{t\eta(u)}} =$  $e^{iuX(t)-t\eta(u)}, t > 0, u \in \mathbb{R}.$

To show:  $Y = \{Y(t), t \ge 0\}$  is a complex-valued martingale.  $\mathsf{E}[Y(t)] = |e^{-t\eta(u)}| < \infty$ , since  $\eta : \mathbb{R}_+ \to \mathbb{C}$ .  $\mathsf{E}Y(t) = 1, t \ge 0$ . Furthermore, it holds

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{E}(Y(t) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}) &= \mathsf{E}(e^{iu(X(t) - X(s)) - (t - s)\eta(u)} e^{iuX(s) - s\eta(u)} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}) \\ &= e^{iuX(s) - s\eta(u)} e^{-(t - s)\eta(u)} \mathsf{E}(e^{iu(X(t) - X(s))}) \\ &= Y(s) e^{-(t - s)\eta(u)} e^{(t - s)\eta(u)} = Y(s), \quad s \leq t. \end{split}$$

6. Compensated martingale

Let  $\{Y_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  be a sequence of random variables with  $\mathsf{E}|Y_n| < \infty \ \forall n \in \mathbb{N}, \ \mathcal{F}_n = \sigma(Y_1, \ldots, Y_n), \ \mathcal{F}_0 = \{\emptyset, \Omega\}.$  Introduce  $S_n = \sum_{k=1}^n Y_k, \ Z_n = \sum_{k=1}^n \mathsf{E}(Y_k|\mathcal{F}_{k-1}).$  Set  $X_n = S_n - Z_n, \ n \in \mathbb{N}.$ Then  $\{X_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  is a martingale w.r.t. the filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ , since

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{E}(X_{n+1}|\mathcal{F}_n) &= \mathsf{E}(S_{n+1} - Z_{n+1}|\mathcal{F}_n) \\ &= \mathsf{E}(X_n + Y_{n+1} - \mathsf{E}(Y_{n+1}|\mathcal{F}_n)|\mathcal{F}_n) \\ &= \mathsf{E}(X_n|\mathcal{F}_n) + \mathsf{E}(Y_{n+1}|\mathcal{F}_n) - \mathsf{E}(Y_{n+1}|\mathcal{F}_n) \\ &= X_n, \end{split}$$

since  $X_n$  is  $\mathcal{F}_n$ -measurable. So, an arbitrary sum  $S_n$  can be compensated to a martingale  $S_n - Z_n$  by subtracting a predictable sequence  $Z_n$ , in the sense that  $Z_n$  can be predicted knowing  $S_1, \ldots, S_{n-1}$ .

7. Monotone Submartingales/Supermartingales

Every integrable stochastic process  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$ , which is adapted w.r.t. to a filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_s, s \ge 0\}$  and has a.s. monotone nondecreasing (resp. non-increasing) trajectories, is a sub- (resp. a super-)martingale.

In fact, it holds e.g.  $X(t) \stackrel{a.s.}{\geq} X(s), t \geq s \Rightarrow \mathsf{E}(X(t) \mid \mathcal{F}_s) \stackrel{a.s.}{\geq} \mathsf{E}(X(s) \mid \mathcal{F}_s) \stackrel{a.s.}{=} X(s)$ . In particular, every subordinator is a submartingale.

#### Lemma 5.2.1

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a stochastic process, which is adapted w.r.t. a filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \ge 0\}$ and let  $f : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$  be convex such that  $\mathsf{E}|f(X(t))| < \infty, t \ge 0$ . Then  $Y = \{f(X(t)), t \ge 0\}$  is a sub-martingale, if

- a) X is a martingale, or
- b) X is a sub-martingale and f is monotone nondecreasing.

**Proof** Use Jensen's inequality for conditional expectations:

$$\mathsf{E}(f(X(t)) \mid \mathcal{F}_s) \stackrel{\text{a.s.}}{\geq} f(\underbrace{\mathsf{E}(X(t) \mid \mathcal{F}_s)}_{\geq X(s), \stackrel{\text{a.s.}}{=} X(s)}) \stackrel{\text{a.s.}}{\geq} f(X(s)).$$

# 5.3 Uniform Integrability

It is known that in general  $X_n \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{a.s.} X$  or  $X_n \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{P} X$  do not yield  $X_n \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{L_1} X$ . Here  $X, X_1, X_2, \ldots$  are random variables defined on the probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$ . When does

 $X_n \xrightarrow{P} X^{"} \Rightarrow X^n \xrightarrow{L_1} X^{"}$  hold? The answer provides the notion of uniform integrability of  $\{X_n, n \in \mathbb{N}\}$ .

#### Definition 5.3.1

The sequence  $\{X_n, n \in \mathbb{N}\}$  of random variables is called *uniformly integrable*, if  $\mathsf{E}|X_n| < \infty$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , and  $\sup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \mathsf{E}(|X_n| 1(|X_n| > x)) \xrightarrow[x \to +\infty]{} 0$ .

#### Remark 5.3.1

Let  $\{X_n\}_{n\geq 0}$  and  $\{Y_n\}_{n\geq 0}$  be uniformly integrable sequences of random variables, c be a constant. Then  $\{cX_n\}_{n\geq 0}$ ,  $\{c+X_n\}_{n\geq 0}$ ,  $\{X_n+Y_n\}_{n\geq 0}$ ,  $\{\max\{|X_n|, |Y_n|\}\}_{n\geq 0}$  are uniformly integrable as well.

#### Lemma 5.3.1

The sequence  $\{X_n, n \in \mathbb{N}\}$  of random variables is uniformly integrable if and only if

- 1.  $\sup_{n\in\mathbb{N}}\mathsf{E}|X_n|<\infty$  (uniform boundedness) and
- 2. for every  $\varepsilon > 0$  there is a  $\delta > 0$  such that  $\mathsf{E}(|X_n|1(A)) < \varepsilon$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and all  $A \in \mathcal{F}$  with  $\mathsf{P}(A) < \delta$ .

**Proof** Let  $\{X_n\}$  be a sequence of random variables. It has to be shown that

$$\sup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \mathsf{E}(|X_n| \mathbf{1}(|X_n| > x)) \xrightarrow[x \to +\infty]{} 0 \iff \begin{array}{c} 1) \quad \sup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \mathsf{E}|X_n| < \infty \\ 2) \quad \forall \varepsilon > 0 \ \exists \delta > 0 : \mathsf{E}(|X_n| \mathbf{1}(A)) < \varepsilon \ \forall A \in \mathcal{F} : \mathsf{P}(A) < \delta \\ \leftarrow ``$$

Set  $A_n = \{|X_n| > x\}$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and x > 0. It holds  $\mathsf{P}(A_n) \le \frac{1}{x}\mathsf{E}|X_n|$  by Markov's inequality and consequently  $\sup_n \mathsf{P}(A_n) \le \frac{1}{x} \sup_n \mathsf{E}|X_n| \le \frac{c}{x} \xrightarrow[x \to \infty]{} 0$  $\Rightarrow \exists N > 0 : \forall x > N \mathsf{P}(A_n) < \delta$ 

<sup>2)</sup>  $\Rightarrow \sup_{n} \mathsf{E}(|X_{n}|1(A_{n})) \leq \varepsilon$ . Since  $\varepsilon > 0$  can be chosen arbitrarily small

$$\Rightarrow \sup_{n} \mathsf{E}(|X_{n}| \mathbb{1}(|X_{n}| > x)) \xrightarrow[x \to \infty]{} 0.$$

"⇒"

1.

$$\sup_{n} \mathsf{E}|X_{n}| \leq \sup_{n} (\mathsf{E}(|X_{n}|1(|X_{n}| > x)) + \mathsf{E}(|X_{n}|1(|X_{n}| \le x)))$$
  
$$\leq \sup_{n} (\mathsf{E}(|X_{n}|1(|X_{n}| > x)) + x \underbrace{\mathsf{P}(|X_{n}| \le x)}_{\le 1})$$
  
$$\leq \varepsilon + x < \infty$$

2. For all  $\varepsilon > 0 \exists x > 0$  such that  $\mathsf{E}(|X_n| \mathsf{1}(|X_n| > x)) < \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$  because of uniform integrability. Choose  $\delta > 0$  such that  $x\delta < \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$ . Then it holds

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{E}(|X_n|\mathbf{1}(A)) &= & \mathsf{E}(\underbrace{|X_n|}_{\leq x} \underbrace{\mathbf{1}(|X_n| \leq x)}_{\leq 1} \mathbf{1}(A)) + \mathsf{E}(|X_n|\mathbf{1}(|X_n| > x) \underbrace{\mathbf{1}(A)}_{\leq 1}) \\ &\leq & \underbrace{x\mathsf{P}(A)}_{\leq \frac{\varepsilon}{2}} + \underbrace{\mathsf{E}(|X_n|\mathbf{1}(|X_n| > x))}_{\leq \frac{\varepsilon}{2}} \leq \varepsilon. \end{split}$$

#### Theorem 5.3.1

The sequence of random variables  $\{X_n\}_{n\geq 0}$  is uniformly integrable iff exists function  $\psi: \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ such that  $\psi(x)/x \uparrow +\infty$  for  $x \to +\infty$ ,  $\sup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \mathsf{E}\psi(|X_n|) < \infty$ . For the necessity,  $\psi$  can be chosen to be convex.

**Proof** Without loss of generality, we may assume  $X_n \ge 0$  a.s.  $\forall n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Sufficiency: Let  $v(x) = \psi(x)/x$ . Then

$$\mathsf{E}(X_n 1(X_n > x)) \le \frac{1}{v(x)} \mathsf{E}(X_n v(X_n) 1(X_n > x)) \le \frac{1}{v(x)} \mathsf{E}\psi(X_n) \le \frac{1}{v(x)} \sup_{n \ge 0} \mathsf{E}\psi(X_n) \xrightarrow[x \to +\infty]{} 0,$$

since by assumption v(x) is monotonously increasing to  $+\infty$ , so for  $X_n > x$  it holds

since by assumption v(x) is indicated on v(x) = v(x).  $v(X_n) > v(x) \Rightarrow \frac{v(X_n)}{v(x)} \ge 1$ , and  $xv(x) = \psi(x)$ . Necessity: Since  $\{X_n\}_{n\ge 0}$  is uniformly integrable, it holds  $u(x) := \sup_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \mathsf{E}(X_n1(X_n > x)) \to 0$  monotonously as  $x \to +\infty$ . Choose a sequence  $y_0 = 0$ ,  $y_k \to +\infty$  as  $k \to +\infty$  s.t.  $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \sqrt{u(y_k)} < c < \infty$ . Set  $g(x) = \frac{x}{\sqrt{u(y_k)}}$  if  $x \in [y_k, y_{k+1})$ . It holds  $\frac{g(x)}{x} \uparrow +\infty$  as  $x \to +\infty$ , since  $\frac{g(y_k-0)}{y_k} \leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{u(y_{k-1})}} \leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{u(y_k)}} = \frac{g(y_k)}{y_k}$  for all  $k \in N$ . Furthermore, it holds

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{E}g(X_n) &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \mathsf{E}g(X_n) \mathbf{1}(X_n \in [y_k, y_{k+1})) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \mathsf{E}\left(\frac{X_n}{\sqrt{u(y_k)}} \mathbf{1}(X_n \in [y_k, y_{k+1}))\right) \\ &\leq \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\sqrt{u(y_k)}} u(y_k) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \sqrt{u(y_k)} < c < \infty, \qquad \forall n \in \mathbb{N} \end{split}$$

by definition of  $u(y_k)$ . To prove our statement, it is sufficient to construct a convex function  $\psi \leq g$  s.t.  $\psi(x)/x \uparrow +\infty$  for  $x \to +\infty$ . Let the graph of  $\psi(x), x \geq 0$  be a linear interpolation between points  $(y_k, g(y_k - 0)), k \in \mathbb{N}_0$ , cf. Figure 5.1. Since  $\frac{g(y_k - 0)}{y_k} = (u(y_{k-1}))^{-1/2}$  grows



Fig. 5.1: Functions  $\psi$  and g

monotonously with  $k \to +\infty$ , so the supergraph of  $\psi$  is a convex hull of the supergraph of the discontinuous function g(x), hence,  $g(x) \ge \psi(x) \ \forall x \ge 0$  and  $\psi(\cdot)$  is convex by construction. It holds that  $\frac{\psi(y_k)}{y_k} = \frac{g(y_k-0)}{y_k} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{u(y_k)}} \xrightarrow[k \to +\infty]{} +\infty$ , so  $\frac{\psi(x)}{x} \to +\infty$  as  $x \to +\infty$ . Indeed, for  $x \in [y_k, y_{k+1})$ , it holds  $\frac{\psi(x)}{x} = a_k - \frac{b_k}{x}$ , where  $b_k > 0$  by construction of g and  $\psi$ , so monotonicity is clear. Then  $\sup_n \mathsf{E}\psi(X_n) \le \sup_n \mathsf{E}g(X_n) \le c < \infty$ .

#### Lemma 5.3.2

Let  $\{X_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  be a sequence of random variables with  $\mathsf{E}|X_n| < \infty, n \in \mathbb{N}, X_n \xrightarrow{P} X$ . Then  $X_n \xrightarrow{L^1} X$  if and only if  $\{X_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  is uniformly integrable. Particularly,  $X_n \xrightarrow{P} X$  implies  $\mathsf{E}X_n \xrightarrow{n\to\infty} \mathsf{E}X$ .

**Proof** 1) Let  $\{X_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  be uniformly integrable. It has to be shown that  $\mathsf{E}|X_n - X| \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} 0$ . Since  $X_n \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} X$  one obtains that  $\{X_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  has a subsequence  $\{X_{n_k}\}_{k\in\mathbb{N}}$  converging almost surely to X. Consequently, Fatou's Lemma yields

$$\mathsf{E}|X| \le \liminf_{k \to \infty} \mathbb{E}|X_{n_k}| \le \sup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \mathsf{E}|X_n|,$$

and therefore  $\mathsf{E}|X| < \infty$  by Lemma 5.3.1, 1). By Remark 5.3.1 the uniform integrability of  $\{X_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  implies the uniform integrability of  $\{X_n - X\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ . Moreover, one infers from  $\lim_{n\to\infty} P(|X_n - X| > \varepsilon) = 0$  and Lemma 5.3.1, 2) that

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \mathsf{E}(|X_n - X| \mathbf{1}(|X_n - X| > \varepsilon)) = 0$$

for all  $\varepsilon > 0$ . Consequently it follows

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \mathsf{E}|X_n - X| = \lim_{n \to \infty} \left[\mathsf{E}(|X_n - X| \mathbf{1}(|X_n - X| > \varepsilon)) + \mathsf{E}(|X_n - X| \mathbf{1}(|X_n - X| \le \varepsilon))\right] \le 2\varepsilon$$

for all  $\varepsilon > 0$ , i.e.  $X_n \xrightarrow{L^1}{n \to \infty} X$ .

- 2) Now let  $\mathsf{E}|X_n X| \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} 0$ . The properties 1) and 2) of Lemma 5.3.1 have to be shown.
- 1.  $\sup_{n} \mathsf{E}|X_{n}| \leq \sup_{n} \mathsf{E}|X_{n} X| + \mathsf{E}|X| < \infty$ , since  $X_{n} \xrightarrow{L^{1}} X$ .
- 2. For all  $A \subset \mathcal{F}$ ,  $\mathsf{P}(A) \leq \delta$ :

$$\mathsf{E}(|X_n|\mathsf{1}(A)) \le \mathsf{E}(|X_n - X|\underbrace{\mathsf{1}(A)}_{\le 1}) + \mathsf{E}(|X|\mathsf{1}(A)) \le \underbrace{\mathsf{E}|X_n - X|}_{<\frac{\varepsilon}{2}} + \frac{\varepsilon}{2} = \varepsilon$$

with an appropriate choice of  $\delta$ , since  $\mathsf{E}|X| < \infty$  and since for all  $\varepsilon > 0 \exists N$ , such that for all  $n > N \mathsf{E}|X_n - X| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$ .

Corollary 5.3.1 Let  $X_n \xrightarrow{P} X$ .

- 1. If  $f : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$  is continuous and either a) bounded or b)  $\{f(X_n)\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  is uniformly integrable then  $f(X_n) \xrightarrow{L^1}{n \to \infty} f(X)$ .
- 2. Dominated convergence theorem of Lebesgue: if  $|X_n| \leq Y$  a.s.  $\forall n$  and  $\mathsf{E}Y < \infty$  then there exists  $\mathsf{E}X$  and  $X_n \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{L^1} X$ .
- 3. If  $\{|X_n|^r\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}, r \geq 1$  is uniformly integrable then  $X_n \xrightarrow[n\to\infty]{L^r} X$ . If  $\mathsf{E}|X_n|^r < \infty$  and  $X_n \xrightarrow[n\to\infty]{L^r} X$  for  $r \geq 1$  then  $\{|X_n|^r\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  is uniformly bounded.
- 4. If  $\mathsf{E}|X_n|^{r+\alpha} < c < \infty$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and some  $r \ge 1, \alpha > 0$  then  $X_n \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{L^r} X$ .

**Proof** <u>1,b</u>: By continuity theorem (cf. Theorem 6.4.3, WR),  $f(X_n) \xrightarrow{P} f(X)$ . The assertion follows by Lemma 5.3.2.

<u>1,a</u>): Show that  $\{f(X_n)\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  is uniformly integrable. Since f is bounded,  $\{f(X_n)\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  is uniformly integrable by Theorem 5.3.1 with  $\psi(x) = x^{1+\delta}, \delta > 0$ . Application of 1,b) finishes the proof.

2): By Lemma 5.3.1, we need to show the following:

a)  $\sup_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \mathsf{E}|X_n| \leq \mathsf{E}Y < \infty$ . b)  $\forall \varepsilon > 0 \ \exists \delta > 0 : \mathsf{E}(|X_n|1(A)) \leq \mathsf{E}(Y1(A)) < \varepsilon, \forall n \in \mathbb{N}, \forall A \in \mathcal{F} : \mathsf{P}(A) < \delta$  since Y is integrable.

<u>3)</u>: Set  $Z_n = |X_n - X|^r, \forall n \in \mathbb{N}$ . It holds  $Z_n \xrightarrow{P}{n \to \infty} 0$  and  $|X_n|^r \xrightarrow{P}{n \to \infty} |X|^r$  by continuity theorem.  $\{Z_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  is uniformly integrable by Minkowski inequality, since  $\{|X_n|^r\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  and  $|X|^r$  are uniformly integrable. The application of Lemma 5.3.2 to  $\{Z_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  finishes the proof. 4): Apply Theorem 5.3.1 with  $\psi(x) = x^{1+\alpha/r}$  to see that  $\{|X_n|^r\}$  is uniformly integrable. Then

4): Apply Theorem 5.3.1 with  $\psi(x) = x^{1+\alpha/2}$  to see that  $\{|X_n|^2\}$  is uniformly integrable. Then apply 3).

# 5.4 Stopped Martingales

Notation:  $x_+ = (x)_+ = \max(x, 0), x \in \mathbb{R}$ .

#### Theorem 5.4.1 (Doob's inequality):

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a càdlàg submartingale, adapted w.r.t. the filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \ge 0\}$ . Then for arbitrary t > 0 and arbitrary x > 0 it holds:

$$\mathsf{P}\left(\sup_{0\leq s\leq t}X(s)>x\right)\leq \frac{\mathsf{E}(X(t))_{+}}{x}.$$

**Proof** Since  $\mathsf{P}(\sup_{0 \le s \le t} X(s) > x) = \mathsf{P}(\sup_{0 \le s \le t} (X(s))_+ > x)$  for all  $t \ge 0, x > 0$ , assume w.l.o.g.  $X(t) \ge 0, t \ge 0$  a.s. Introduce  $A = \{\sup_{t_1,\ldots,t_n} X(s) > x\}$  for arbitrary times  $0 \le t_1 < t_2 < \ldots < t_n \le t$ . Then  $A = \bigcup_{k=1}^n A_k$ , where

$$A_{1} = \{X(t_{1}) > x\}, A_{2} = \{X(t_{1}) \le x, X(t_{2}) > x\}, \vdots A_{k} = \{X(t_{1}) \le x, X(t_{2}) \le x, \dots, X(t_{k-1}) \le x, X(t_{k}) > x\}$$

 $k = 2, ..., n, A_i \cap A_j = \emptyset, i \neq j$ . It has to be shown that  $\mathsf{P}(A) \leq \frac{\mathsf{E}(X(t_n))}{x}$ . Indeed,

$$\mathsf{E}(X(t_n)) \ge \mathsf{E}(X(t_n)\mathbf{1}(A)) = \sum_{k=1}^n \mathsf{E}(X(t_n)\mathbf{1}(A_k)) \ge x \sum_{k=1}^n \mathsf{P}(A_k) = x\mathsf{P}(A)$$

 $k = 1, \ldots, n - 1$ , since X is a submartingale and thus it follows that

$$\mathsf{E}(X(t_n)\mathsf{1}(A_k)) \ge \mathsf{E}(X(t_k)\mathsf{1}(A_k)) \ge \mathsf{E}(x\mathsf{1}(A_k)) = x\mathsf{P}(A_k),$$

 $k = 1, \ldots, n-1, t_n > t_k$ . Let  $B \subset [0, t]$  be a finite subset,  $0 \in B, t \in B \Rightarrow$  it is proven similarly that  $\mathsf{P}(\max_{s \in B} X(s) > x) \leq \frac{\mathsf{E}X(t)}{x}$ . Since  $\mathbb{Q}$  is dense in  $\mathbb{R}, B = [0, t) \cap \mathbb{Q} \cup \{t\} = \bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} B_k$ ,  $B_k \subset [0, t) \cap \mathbb{Q} \cup \{t\}$  finite,  $B_k \subset B_n, k < n$ . By the monotonicity of the probability measure it holds

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{P}\left(\sup_{s\in B}X(s)>x\right) &= \mathsf{P}\left(\sup_{s\in\cup_nB_n}X(s)>x\right) = \mathsf{P}\left(\cup_n\{\max_{s\in B_n}X(s)>x\}\right) \\ &= \lim_{n\to\infty}\mathsf{P}\left(\max_{s\in B_n}X(s)\ge x\right) \le \frac{\mathsf{E}X(t)}{x}. \end{split}$$

By the right-continuity of the paths of X it holds  $\mathsf{P}(\sup_{0 \le s \le t} X(s) > x) \le \frac{\mathsf{E}X(t)}{x}$ .

#### Corollary 5.4.1

Let  $\mu > 0$  and  $Y = \{Y(t), t \ge 0\}$  with  $Y(t) = W(t) - \mu t$  be a Wiener process with negative drift. Then

$$\mathsf{P}\left(\sup_{t\geq 0}Y(t)>x\right)\leq e^{-2\mu x}, \quad x>0.$$

**Proof** From Example 3 of Section 5.2  $X(t) = \exp\{u(Y(t) + t\mu) - \frac{u^2t}{2}\}, t \ge 0$  is a martingale w.r.t. the natural filtration of W. For  $u = 2\mu$  it holds  $X(t) = \exp\{2\mu Y(t)\}, t \ge 0$ . By Theorem 5.4.1

$$\mathsf{P}\left\{\sup_{0 \le s \le t} Y(s) > x\right\} = \mathsf{P}\left\{\sup_{0 \le s \le t} e^{2\mu Y(s)} > e^{2\mu x}\right\} \le \frac{\mathsf{E}e^{2\mu Y(t)}}{e^{2\mu x}} = \frac{\mathsf{E}X(t)}{e^{2\mu x}} = e^{-2\mu x}, \quad x > 0,$$

since by martingale property of X it holds  $\mathsf{E}X(t) = \mathsf{E}X(0) = 1$ , and consequently

$$\mathsf{P}(\sup_{s \ge 0} Y(s) > x) = \lim_{t \to \infty} \mathsf{P}(\sup_{0 \le s \le t} Y(s) > x) \le e^{-2\mu x}.$$

#### Theorem 5.4.2

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a martingale w.r.t. the filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \ge 0\}$  with càdlàg paths. If  $\tau : \Omega \to [0, \infty)$  is a finite stopping time w.r.t. the filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \ge 0\}$ , then the stochastic process  $\{X(\tau \land t), t \ge 0\}$  is a martingale (the so-called *stopped martingale*) w.r.t. the same filtration. Here  $a \land b = \min\{a, b\}$ .

#### Lemma 5.4.1

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a martingale with càdlàg-trajectories w.r.t. the filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \ge 0\}$ . Let  $\tau$  be a finite stopping time and let  $\{\tau_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  be the sequence of discrete stopping times out of Theorem 5.1.2, for which  $\tau_n \downarrow \tau, n \to \infty$ , holds. Then  $\{X(\tau_n \land t)\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  is uniformly integrable for every  $t \ge 0$ .

**Proof** As in Theorem 5.1.2, consider stopping times

$$\tau_n = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } \tau = 0\\ \frac{k+1}{2^n}, & \text{if } \frac{k}{2^n} < \tau \le \frac{k+1}{2^n}, \text{ for a } k \in \mathbb{N}_0 \end{cases}$$

- 1. It is to be shown:  $\mathsf{E}|X(\tau_n \wedge t)| < \infty$  for all n.  $\mathsf{E}|X(\tau_n \wedge t)| \leq \sum_{k:\frac{k}{2^n} < t} \mathsf{E}|X(\frac{k}{2^n})| + \mathsf{E}|X(t)| < \infty$ , since X is a martingale, therefore integrable.
- 2. It is to be shown:  $\sup_{n} \mathsf{E}(|X(\tau_n \wedge t)| \mathbb{1}(\underbrace{|X(\tau_n \wedge t)| > x}_{A_n})) \xrightarrow[x \to \infty]{} 0.$

$$\begin{split} \sup_{n} \mathsf{E}(|X(\tau_{n} \wedge t)|\mathbf{1}(A_{n})) \\ &= \sup_{n} \left( \sum_{k:\frac{k}{2^{n}} < t} \mathsf{E}\left( \left| X\left(\frac{k}{2^{n}}\right) \right| \mathbf{1}\left( \left\{ \tau_{n} = \frac{k}{2^{n}} \right\} \cap A_{n} \right) \right) + \mathsf{E}\left( |X(t)| \mathbf{1}\left( \tau_{n} > t \right) \mathbf{1}\left(A_{n}\right) \right) \right) \\ &\leq \sup_{n} \left( \sum_{k:\frac{k}{2^{n}} < t} \mathsf{E}\left( |X(t)| \mathbf{1}\left( \left\{ \tau_{n} = \frac{k}{2^{n}} \right\} \cap A_{n} \right) \right) + \mathsf{E}\left( |X(t)| \mathbf{1}\left( \{\tau_{n} > t\} \cap A_{n}\right) \right) \right) \\ &= \sup_{n} \left( \mathsf{E}\left( |X(t)| \sum_{k:\frac{k}{2^{n}} < t} \mathbf{1}\left( \left\{ \tau_{n} = \frac{k}{2^{n}} \right\} \cap A_{n} \right) \right) + \mathsf{E}\left( |X(t)| \mathbf{1}\left( \{\tau_{n} > t\} \cap A_{n}\right) \right) \right) \\ &= \sup_{n} \mathsf{E}\left( |X(t)| \mathbf{1}\left(A_{n}\right)\right) \leq \sup_{n} \mathsf{E}\left( |X(t)| \mathbf{1}\left(Y > x\right)\right) \\ &= \mathsf{E}\left( |X(t)| \mathbf{1}\left(Y > x\right)\right), \end{split}$$

where  $1(A_n) \leq 1(\sup_{n} |X(\tau_n \wedge t)| > x)$ . It remains to prove that  $\mathsf{P}(Y > x) \xrightarrow[x \to \infty]{} 0$ . (The latter obviously implies  $\lim_{x \to \infty} \mathsf{E}(|X(t)| \mathbf{1}(Y > x)) = 0$ , since  $\mathsf{E}|X(t)| < \infty$  for all  $t \geq 0$ .) Doob's inequality yields

$$\mathsf{P}(Y > x) \le \mathsf{P}(\sup_{0 \le s \le t} |X(s)| > x) \le \frac{\mathsf{E}|X(t)|}{x} \xrightarrow[x \to +\infty]{} 0,$$

since  $\{|X(t)|, t \ge 0\}$  is a submartingale.

#### **Proof** of Theorem 5.4.2

It is to be shown that  $\{X(\tau \wedge t), t \ge 0\}$  is a martingale.

- 1.  $\mathsf{E}|X(\tau \wedge t)| < \infty$  for all  $t \ge 0$ . As in Corollary 5.1.1  $\tau_n \downarrow \tau$ ,  $n \to \infty$  yields  $X(\tau_n \wedge t) \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{a.s.} X(\tau \wedge t)$ . Since  $\mathsf{E}|X(\tau_n \wedge t)| < \infty$  for all n (cf. 1. of the proof of Lemma 5.4.1) it follows  $\mathsf{E}|X(\tau \wedge t)| < \infty$  because of Lemma 5.4.1, since uniform integrability gives  $L^1$ -convergence.
- 2. Martingale property It is to be shown:

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{E}(X(\tau \wedge t) \mid \mathcal{F}_s) & \stackrel{a.s.}{=} \quad X(\tau \wedge s), \quad s \leq t \\ & \updownarrow \\ \mathsf{E}(X(\tau \wedge t) \mathsf{1}(A)) & \stackrel{a.s.}{=} \quad \mathsf{E}(X(\tau \wedge s) \mathsf{1}(A)), \ A \in \mathcal{F}_s \end{split}$$

First of all, we show that  $\{X(\tau_n \wedge t), t \geq 0\}$  is a martingale, i.e.  $\mathsf{E}(X(\tau_n \wedge t)\mathbf{1}(A)) = \mathsf{E}(X(\tau_n \wedge s)\mathbf{1}(A)), A \in \mathcal{F}_s, n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Let  $t_1, \ldots, t_k \in (s, t)$  be discrete values, which  $\tau_n$  takes with positive probability in (s, t).

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{E}(X(\tau_{n} \wedge t) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}) &= \mathsf{E}(\mathsf{E}(X(\tau_{n} \wedge t) \mid \mathcal{F}_{t_{k}}) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}) \\ &= \mathsf{E}(\mathsf{E}(\underbrace{X(\tau_{n} \wedge t)}_{X(\tau_{n})} \mathbf{1}(\tau_{n} \leq t_{k}) \mid \mathcal{F}_{t_{k}}) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}) \\ &+ \mathsf{E}(\mathsf{E}(\underbrace{X(\tau_{n} \wedge t)}_{X(t)} \mathbf{1}(\tau_{n} > t_{k}) \mid \mathcal{F}_{t_{k}}) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}) \\ &= \mathsf{E}(\mathbf{1}(\tau_{n} \leq t_{k})\mathsf{E}(X(\tau_{n}) \mid \mathcal{F}_{t_{k}}) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}) \\ &+ \mathsf{E}(\mathbf{1}(\tau_{n} > t_{k})\mathsf{E}(X(t) \mid \mathcal{F}_{t_{k}}) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}) \\ &= \mathsf{E}(X(\tau_{n})\mathbf{1}(\tau_{n} \leq t_{k}) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}) + \mathsf{E}(\mathbf{1}(\tau_{n} > t_{k})X(t_{k}) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}) \\ &= \mathsf{E}(X(t_{k} \wedge \tau_{n}) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}) = \ldots = \mathsf{E}(X(t_{k-1} \wedge \tau_{n}) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}) = \ldots \\ &= \mathsf{E}(X(t_{1} \wedge \tau_{n})\mathbf{1}(\tau_{n} \leq s) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}) + \mathsf{E}(X(t_{1} \wedge \tau_{n})\mathbf{1}(\tau_{n} > s) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}) \\ &= \mathsf{I}(\tau_{n} \leq s)X(\tau_{n}) + \mathsf{I}(\tau_{n} > s)\mathsf{E}(X(t_{1}) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}) \\ &= \mathsf{I}(\tau_{n} \leq s)X(\tau_{n}) + \mathsf{I}(\tau_{n} > s)X(s) \\ \overset{a.s.}{=} X(\tau_{n} \wedge s), \end{split}$$

where ",..." means the above reasoning. Since X is càdlàg and  $\tau_n \downarrow \tau$ ,  $n \to \infty$ , it holds  $X(\tau_n \land t) \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} X(\tau \land t)$ . Furthermore, by Lemma 5.4.1  $\{X(\tau_n \land t)\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  is uniformly integrable. Therefore it follows that

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \mathsf{E}(X(\tau_n \wedge t)\mathbf{1}(A)) &=& \mathsf{E}(X(\tau_n \wedge s)\mathbf{1}(A)) & \text{ for all } A \in \mathcal{F}_s \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathsf{E}(X(\tau \wedge t)\mathbf{1}(A)) &=& \mathsf{E}(X(\tau \wedge s)\mathbf{1}(A)) \end{array}$$

 $\Rightarrow \{X(\tau \wedge t), t \ge 0\}$  is a martingale.

	-	-	۰.	

#### **Definition 5.4.1**

Let  $\tau : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}_+$  be a stopping time w.r.t. the filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \ge 0\}, \mathcal{F}_t \subset \mathcal{F}, t \ge 0$ . The stopped  $\sigma$ -algebra  $\mathcal{F}_{\tau}$  is defined by  $A \in \mathcal{F}_{\tau} \Leftrightarrow A \cap \{\tau \le t\} \in \mathcal{F}_t$  for all  $t \ge 0$ .

- **Lemma 5.4.2** 1. Let  $\eta, \tau$  be stopping times w.r.t. the filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \ge 0\}, \eta \stackrel{a.s.}{\leq} \tau$ . Then it holds  $\mathcal{F}_\eta \subset \mathcal{F}_\tau$ .
  - 2. Let  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a martingale with càdlàg-trajectories w.r.t. the filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \ge 0\}$  and let  $\tau$  be a stopping time w.r.t.  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \ge 0\}$ . Then  $X(\tau)$  is  $\mathcal{F}_{\tau}$ -measurable.

**Proof** 1. Let  $A \in \mathcal{F}_{\eta}$ . Then  $A \cap \{\eta \leq t\} \in \mathcal{F}_t, t \geq 0$  and

$$A \cap \{\tau \leq t\} = \underbrace{A \cap \{\eta \leq t\}}_{\in \mathcal{F}_t} \cap \underbrace{\{\tau \leq t\}}_{\in \mathcal{F}_t} \cup \underbrace{B}_{\in \mathcal{F}_0} \in \mathcal{F}_t,$$

for all  $t \ge 0$ , where  $B \subseteq \{\eta > \tau\}$  has probability zero since  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$  is a complete probability space.  $\Rightarrow A \in \mathcal{F}_{\tau}$  since  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \ge 0\}$  is a complete filtration.

2. It has to be shown:  $\{X(\tau) \in B\} \cap \{\tau \leq t\} \in \mathcal{F}_t$  for all  $t \geq 0, B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R})$ . Since X is càdlàg it holds

$$X(s,\omega) = X(0,\omega)\mathbf{1}(s=0) + \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{k=2}^{2^n} X\left(t\frac{k-1}{2^n},\omega\right) \mathbf{1}\left(\frac{k-1}{2^n}t \le s < \frac{k}{2^n}t\right), \quad s \in [0,t].$$

 $\Rightarrow X(s,\omega)$  is  $B_{[0,t]} \times \mathcal{F}_t$ -measurable. Then for  $\omega \in \{\tau \leq t\}$  it holds

$$X(\tau(\omega)) = X(0,\omega) \mathbf{1}\{\tau(\omega) = 0\} + \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{k=2}^{2^n} X\left(t\frac{k-1}{2^n},\omega\right) \mathbf{1}\left(\frac{k-1}{2^n}t \le \tau(\omega) < \frac{k}{2^n}t\right)$$

is  $\mathcal{F}_t$ -measurable, since  $X(0,\omega)$  is  $\mathcal{F}_0$ -measurable,  $\mathcal{F}_0 \subseteq \mathcal{F}_t$ ,  $\mathbf{1}\{\tau(\omega) = 0\}$  is  $\mathcal{F}_0$ -measurable,  $X(t\frac{k}{2^n},\omega)$  is  $\mathcal{F}_{tk/2^n}$ -measurable,  $\mathcal{F}_{tk/2^n} \subseteq \mathcal{F}_t$  and  $\mathbf{1}\{\frac{k-1}{2^n}t \leq \tau(\omega) < \frac{k}{2^n}t\}$  is  $\mathcal{F}_{tk/2^n}$ -measurable.  $\Rightarrow X(\tau)$  is  $\mathcal{F}_{\tau}$ -measurable.

#### Theorem 5.4.3 (Optional sampling theorem):

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a martingale with càdlàg trajectories w.r.t. a filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \ge 0\}$ and let  $\tau$  be a finite stopping time w.r.t.  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \ge 0\}$ . Then  $\mathsf{E}(X(t) \mid \mathcal{F}_{\tau}) \stackrel{a.s.}{=} X(\tau \land t), t > 0$ .

#### Remark 5.4.1

The meaning of this theorem is the following: the predictor (or sampler) of X(t) under the observations  $\{X(s), s \in [0, \tau]\}$  (i.e.  $\mathcal{F}_{\tau}$ ) is either X(t) itself if it was observed ( $t \leq \tau$ ) or the last observable value  $X(\tau)$ , otherwise (if  $t > \tau$ ).

**Proof** First of all we show that  $\mathsf{E}(X(t) | \mathcal{F}_{\tau_n}) \stackrel{a.s.}{=} X(\tau_n \wedge t), t \geq 0, n \in \mathbb{N}$ , where  $\tau_n \downarrow \tau$ ,  $n \to \infty$ , is the discrete approximation of  $\tau$ , cf. Theorem 5.1.2. Let  $t_1 \leq t_2 \leq \ldots \leq t_k = t$  be the values attained by  $\tau_n \wedge t$  with positive probability. It is to be shown that for all  $A \in \mathcal{F}_{\tau_n}$  it holds:  $\mathsf{E}(X(t)1(A)) = \mathsf{E}(X(\tau_n \wedge t)1(A))$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} (X(t) - X(\tau_n \wedge t))\mathbf{1}(A) &\stackrel{t_k = t}{=} \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} (X(t_k) - X(t_i))\mathbf{1}(\{\tau_n \wedge t = t_i\} \cap A) \\ &= \sum_{i=2}^k (X(t_k) - X(t_{i-1}))\mathbf{1}(\{\tau_n \wedge t = t_{i-1}\} \cap A) \\ &= \sum_{i=2}^k \sum_{j=i}^k (X(t_j) - X(t_{j-1}))\mathbf{1}(\{\tau_n \wedge t = t_{i-1}\} \cap A) \\ &= \sum_{j=2}^k \sum_{i=2}^j (X(t_j) - X(t_{j-1}))\mathbf{1}(\{\tau_n \wedge t = t_{i-1}\} \cap A) \\ &= \sum_{j=2}^k (X(t_j) - X(t_{j-1}))\mathbf{1}(\{\tau_n \wedge t \le t_{j-1}\} \cap A), \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{E}((X(t) - X(\tau_n \wedge t))\mathbf{1}(A)) &= \sum_{j=2}^k \mathsf{E}\left[(X(t_j) - X(t_{j-1}))\mathbf{1}(\{\tau_n \wedge t \le t_{j-1}\} \cap A)\right] \\ &= \sum_{j=2}^k \mathsf{E}\left[\mathsf{E}\left[(X(t_j) - \underbrace{X(t_{j-1})}_{\mathcal{F}_{t_{j-1}} - meas.}) \underbrace{\mathbf{1}(\{\tau_n \wedge t \le t_{j-1}\} \cap A)}_{\mathcal{F}_{t_{j-1}} - meas.}\right]|\mathcal{F}_{t_{j-1}}\right] \\ &= \sum_{j=2}^k \mathsf{E}\left[\mathbf{1}(\{\tau_n \wedge t \le t_{j-1}\} \cap A)(\underbrace{\mathsf{E}\left[X(t_j)|\mathcal{F}_{t_{j-1}}\right]}_{=X(t_{j-1})} - X(t_{j-1}))\right] \\ &= 0 \quad a.s. \end{split}$$

by Definition 5.4.1 and martingale property. Hence it holds  $\mathsf{E}(X(t) \mid \mathcal{F}_{\tau_n}) \stackrel{a.s.}{=} X(\tau_n \wedge t)$ , since  $X(\tau_n)$  is  $\mathcal{F}_{\tau_n}$ -measurable.  $\tau \leq \tau_n \Rightarrow \mathcal{F}_{\tau} \subseteq \mathcal{F}_{\tau_n}$ . Since  $\{X(\tau_n \wedge t)\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  is uniformly integrable for  $t \in [0, \infty)$ , it holds

$$\mathsf{E}(X(t) \mid \mathcal{F}_{\tau}) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \mathsf{E}(X(t) \mid \mathcal{F}_{\tau_n}) = \lim_{n \to \infty} X(\tau_n \wedge t) = X(\tau \wedge t) \ a.s.,$$

since X is càdlàg.

#### Corollary 5.4.2

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a càdlàg martingale and let  $\eta, \tau$  be finite stopping times such that  $\mathsf{P}(\eta \le \tau) = 1$ . Then it holds  $\mathsf{E}(X(t \land \tau) \mid \mathcal{F}_{\eta}) \stackrel{a.s.}{=} X(\eta \land t), t \ge 0$ . In particular,  $\mathsf{E}(X(\tau \land t))) = \mathsf{E}(X(0))$  holds.

**Proof** Since X is a martingale  $\{X(\tau \wedge t), t > 0\}$  is also a martingale by Theorem 5.4.2. Apply Theorem 5.4.3 to it:

$$\mathsf{E}(X(\tau \wedge t) \mid \mathcal{F}_{\eta}) \stackrel{a.s.}{=} X(\tau \wedge \eta \wedge t) \stackrel{a.s.}{=} X(\eta \wedge t),$$
  
since  $\eta \stackrel{a.s.}{\leq} \tau$ . Set  $\eta = 0$ , then  $\mathsf{E}(\mathsf{E}(X(\tau \wedge t) \mid \mathcal{F}_{0})) = \mathsf{E}X(0 \wedge t) = \mathsf{E}X(0).$ 

# 5.5 Lévy Processes and Martingales

#### Theorem 5.5.1

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a Lévy process with characteristics  $(a, b, \nu)$ .

- 1. There exists a càdlàg modification  $\tilde{X} = {\tilde{X}(t), t \ge 0}$  of X.
- 2. The natural filtration of càdlàg Lévy processes ist right-continuous.

#### Without proof

#### Theorem 5.5.2 (Regeneration theorem for Lévy processes):

Let  $X = \{X(t), t > 0\}$  be a càdlàg Lévy process with natural filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_t^X, t \ge 0\}$  and let  $\tau$  be a finite stopping time w.r.t.  $\{\mathcal{F}_t^X, t \ge 0\}$ . The process  $Y = \{Y(t), t \ge 0\}$ , given by  $Y(t) = X(\tau+t) - X(\tau), t \ge 0$ , is also a Lévy process, adapted w.r.t. the filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_{\tau+t}^X, t \ge 0\}$ , which is independent of  $\mathcal{F}_{\tau}^X$  and has the same characteristics as X.  $\tau$  is called *regeneration time*.



Fig. 5.2: Construction of the process Y by means of regeneration time  $\tau$ .

**Proof** For any  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , take arbitrary  $0 \leq t_0 < \cdots < t_n$  and  $u_1, \ldots, u_n \in \mathbb{R}$ . We claim that all assertions of the theorem follow from the relation

$$\mathsf{E}\left(1(A)\exp\left\{\sum_{j=1}^{n} iu_{j}(Y(t_{j}) - Y(t_{j-1}))\right\}\right)$$
(5.5.1)  
=  $\mathsf{P}(A)\mathsf{E}\left(\exp\left\{\sum_{j=1}^{n} iu_{j}(X(t_{j}) - X(t_{j-1}))\right\}\right)$ 

for all  $A \in \mathcal{F}_{\tau}^X$ .

- 1. By Lemma 5.4.2, since  $\tau + s$  and  $\tau + t$ ,  $s, t \ge 0$ ,  $s \le t$  are stopping times with  $\tau + s \le \tau + t$ a.s., we have  $\mathcal{F}_{\tau+s}^X \subseteq \mathcal{F}_{\tau+t}^X$ , i.e.  $\{\mathcal{F}_{\tau+t}^X\}_{t\ge 0}$  is a filtration, and  $Y(t) = X(\tau + t) - X(\tau)$  is  $\{\mathcal{F}_{\tau+t}^X\}$ -adapted:  $X(\tau)$  is  $\mathcal{F}_{\tau}^X$ -measurable,  $X(\tau + t)$  is  $\mathcal{F}_{\tau+t}^X$ -measurable,  $\mathcal{F}_{\tau}^X \subseteq \mathcal{F}_{\tau+t}^X$ .
- 2. It follows from (5.5.1) for  $A = \Omega$  that  $X \stackrel{d}{=} Y$ , i.e., Y is a Lévy process with the same Lévy exponent  $\eta$  as X.
- 3. It also follows from (5.5.1) that Y and  $\mathcal{F}_{\tau}^{X}$  are independent, since arbitrary increments of Y do not depend on  $\mathcal{F}_{\tau}^{X}$ .
- 4. Now let us prove (5.5.1). We begin with the case of
  - a)  $\exists c > 0$ :  $\mathsf{P}(\tau \leq c) = 1$ . By Example 5, b) of Section 5.2,  $\tilde{Y}_j = {\tilde{Y}_j(t)}_{t \geq 0}$ ,  $j = 1, \ldots, n$  with  $\tilde{Y}_j(t) = \exp\{iu_j X(t) t\eta(u_j)\}, t \geq 0$  are complex-valued martingales. Furthermore, it holds

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{E}(\mathbf{1}(A) \exp\{\sum_{j=1}^{n} i u_j (Y(t_j) - Y(t_{j-1}))\}) \\ &= \mathsf{E}(\mathbf{1}(A) \exp\{\sum_{j=1}^{n} i u_j (X(\tau + t_j) - X(\tau) - X(\tau + t_{j-1}) + X(\tau)))\}) \\ &= \mathsf{E}\left(\mathbf{1}(A) \prod_{j=1}^{n} \frac{\tilde{Y}_j(\tau + t_j)}{\tilde{Y}_j(\tau + t_{j-1})} \frac{\exp\{\eta(u_j)(\tau + t_j)\}}{\exp\{\eta(u_j)(\tau + t_{j-1})\}}\right) \end{split}$$

$$= \mathsf{E}\left(\mathsf{E}\left(\mathsf{I}(A)\prod_{j=1}^{n}\frac{\tilde{Y}_{j}(\tau+t_{j})}{\tilde{Y}_{j}(\tau+t_{j-1})}\exp\{(t_{j}-t_{j-1})\eta(u_{j})\} \mid \mathcal{F}_{\tau+t_{n-1}}^{X}\right)\right)$$

$$= \mathsf{E}\left(\mathsf{I}(A)\prod_{j=1}^{n-1}\frac{\tilde{Y}_{j}(\tau+t_{j})}{\tilde{Y}_{j}(\tau+t_{j-1})}e^{(t_{j}-t_{j-1})\eta(u_{j})}\frac{e^{(t_{n}-t_{n-1})\eta(u_{n})}}{\tilde{Y}_{n}(\tau+t_{n-1})}\underbrace{\mathsf{E}(\tilde{Y}_{n}(\tau+t_{n})\mid \mathcal{F}_{\tau+t_{n-1}}^{X})}{\tilde{Y}_{n}(\tau+t_{n-1})}\right)$$

$$= \mathsf{E}\left(\mathsf{I}(A)\left[\prod_{j=1}^{n-1}\frac{\tilde{Y}_{j}(\tau+t_{j})}{\tilde{Y}_{j}(\tau+t_{j-1})}e^{(t_{j}-t_{j-1})\eta(u_{j})}\right]e^{(t_{n}-t_{n-1})\eta(u_{n})}\right)$$

$$= \dots = \mathsf{E}(\mathsf{I}(A)\prod_{j=1}^{n}e^{(t_{j}-t_{j-1})\eta(u_{j})}) = \mathsf{P}(A)\prod_{j=1}^{n}e^{(t_{j}-t_{j-1})\eta(u_{j})}$$

$$= \mathsf{P}(A)\mathsf{E}(\exp\{i\sum_{j=1}^{n}(u_{j}(X(t_{j})-X(t_{j-1}))))\}).$$

b) Prove (5.5.1) for arbitrary finite stopping times  $\tau$ :  $\mathsf{P}(\tau < \infty) = 1$ . For any  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  it holds  $A_k = A \cap \{\tau \leq k\} \in \mathcal{F}^X_{\tau \wedge k}$ . Then it follows from 4. a) and relation (5.5.1) that

$$\mathsf{E}\left(1(A_{k})\exp\left\{\sum_{j=1}^{n}iu_{j}(Y_{k,t_{j}}-Y_{k,t_{j-1}})\right\}\right)$$
(5.5.2)  
=  $\mathsf{P}(A_{k})\mathsf{E}\left(\exp\left\{\sum_{j=1}^{n}iu_{j}(X(t_{j})-X(t_{j-1}))\right\}\right)$ 

for  $Y_{k,t} = X((\tau \wedge k) + t) - X(\tau \wedge k)$ . Now let  $k \to \infty$  on both sides of (5.5.2). By Lebesgue's theorem on majorized convergence, (5.5.1) follows for any a.s. finite  $\tau$ , since  $\tau \wedge k \xrightarrow{a.s.} \tau$  as  $k \to \infty$ .

# 5.6 Martingales and the distribution of the maximum of the Wiener process

Let  $W = \{W(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a Wiener process and let  $M_t = \max_{s \in [0,t]} W(s), t \ge 0$ . We would like to prove Theorem 3.3.2, namely, to show that for t > 0 and  $x \ge 0$  it holds

$$\mathsf{P}(M_t > x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi t}} \int_x^\infty e^{-\frac{y^2}{2t}} dy.$$

## Theorem 5.6.1 (Reflection principle):

Let  $\tau$  be an arbitrary a.s. finite stopping time w.r.t. the natural filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_t^W, t \ge 0\}$ . Let  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be the reflected Wiener process at time  $\tau$ , i.e.  $X(t) = W(\tau \wedge t) - (W(t) - W(\tau \wedge t)), t \ge 0$ . Then  $X \stackrel{d}{=} W$  holds.

**Proof** It holds

$$X(t) = W(\tau \wedge t) - (W(t) - W(\tau \wedge t)) = \begin{cases} W(t) & , \ t < \tau \\ 2W(\tau) - W(t) & , \ t \ge \tau. \end{cases}$$



Fig. 5.3: Reflection principle.

Let  $X_1(t) = W(\tau \wedge t)$ ,  $X_2(t) = W(\tau + t) - W(\tau)$ ,  $t \ge 0$ . From Theorem 5.5.2 follows that  $X_2$  is independent from  $(\tau, X_1)$  (W – Lévy process and  $\tau$  – regeneration time). It holds  $W(t) = X_1(t) + X_2((t - \tau)_+)$ ,  $X(t) = X_1(t) - X_2((t - \tau)_+)$ ,  $t \ge 0$ . Indeed,

$$X_1(t) + X_2((t-\tau)_+) = \begin{cases} W(t) + X_2(0) = W(t), & t < \tau \\ W(\tau) + W(\tau + t - \tau) - W(\tau) = W(t), & t \ge \tau. \end{cases}$$

 $\Rightarrow W(t) = X_1(t) + X_2((t-\tau)_+), t \ge 0.$  Furthermore

$$X_1(t) - X_2((t-\tau)_+) = \begin{cases} W(t) - X_2(0) = W(t), & t < \tau \\ W(\tau) - W(\tau + t - \tau) + W(\tau) = 2W(\tau) - W(t), & t \ge \tau. \end{cases}$$

 $\Rightarrow X(t) = X_1(t) - X_2((t-\tau)_+), t \ge 0$ . From Theorems 5.5.2 and 3.3.3 it follows that  $X_2 \stackrel{d}{=} W$ ,  $-W \stackrel{d}{=} W$  and hence

$$\begin{array}{cccc} (\tau_1, X_1, X_2) & \stackrel{d}{=} & (\tau, X_1, -X_2) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & . \\ W & \stackrel{d}{=} & X \end{array}$$

Let  $W = \{W(t), t \ge 0\}$  be the Wiener process on  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$ , let  $\{\mathcal{F}_t^W, t \ge 0\}$  be the natural filtration w.r.t. W. For  $z \in \mathbb{R}$  let  $\tau_{\{z\}}^W = \inf\{t \ge 0 : W(t) = z\}$ .  $\tau_{\{z\}}^W := \tau_z^W$  is an a.s. finite stopping time w.r.t.  $\{\mathcal{F}_t^W, t \ge 0\}, z > 0$ , since it obviously holds  $\{\tau_z^W \le t\} \in \mathcal{F}_t^W$ . Since W has continuous paths (a.s.),  $\{\mathcal{F}_t^W, t \ge 0\}$  is right-continuous.

#### Corollary 5.6.1

For all z > 0,  $y \ge 0$ , it holds that  $\mathsf{P}(M_t \ge z, W(t) < z - y) = \mathsf{P}(W(t) > y + z)$ .

**Proof**  $M_t$  is a random variable, since W has continuous paths. Let  $\tau := \tau_z^W$ . By Theorem 5.6.1, it holds for  $Y(t) = W(\tau \wedge t) - (W(t) - W(\tau \wedge t)), t \ge 0$ , that  $Y \stackrel{d}{=} W$ . Hence  $\{\tau_z^W, W\} \stackrel{d}{=} \{\tau_z^Y, Y\}$ ,

since  $W(\tau) = z, \, \tau_z^W = \tau_z^Y$ . Therefore

$$\mathsf{P}(\tau \leq t, W(t) < z - y) = \mathsf{P}(\tau_z^Y \leq t, Y(t) < z - y),$$

whereas  $\{\tau_z^Y \leq t\} \cap \{Y(t) < z - y\} = \{\tau_z^Y \leq t\} \cap \{2z - W(t) < z - y\}$ . If  $\tau = \tau_z^Y \leq t$  then  $Y(t) = 2W(\tau) - W(t) = 2z - W(t)$ , and hence

$$\mathsf{P}(\tau \le t, W(t) < z - y) = \mathsf{P}(\tau \le t, 2z - W(t) < z - y) = \mathsf{P}(\tau \le t, W(t) > z + y) = \mathsf{P}(W(t) > z + y).$$

Per definition of  $\tau = \tau_z^W$  it holds:

$$\mathsf{P}(\tau \leq t, W(t) < z-y) = \mathsf{P}(M_t \geq z, W(t) < z-y) = \mathsf{P}(W(t) > y+z)$$

since  $\tau_z^W \leq t \iff \max_{s \in [0,t]} W(s) \geq z$ .

Now we are ready to prove Theorem 3.3.2.

**Proof** In Corollary 5.6.1 set  $y = 0 \Rightarrow \mathsf{P}(M_t \ge z, W(t) < z) = \mathsf{P}(W(t) > z)$ . It holds  $\mathsf{P}(W(t) > z) = \mathsf{P}(W(t) \ge z)$  for all t and all z, since  $W(t) \sim \mathcal{N}(0, t)$ , thus continuously distributed.

$$\Rightarrow \mathsf{P}(M_t \ge z, W(t) < z) + \mathsf{P}(W(t) \ge z) = \mathsf{P}(W(t) > z) + \mathsf{P}(W(t) > z)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathsf{P}(M_t \ge z, W(t) < z) + \mathsf{P}(M_t \ge z, W(t) \ge z) = \mathsf{P}(M_t \ge z) = 2\mathsf{P}(W(t) > z)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathsf{P}(M_t > z) = 2\mathsf{P}(W(t) > z) = 2\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi t}} \int_z^\infty e^{-\frac{y^2}{2z}} dy = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi t}} \int_z^\infty e^{-\frac{y^2}{2t}} dy.$$

Let  $X(t) = W(t) - t\mu$ ,  $t \ge 0$ ,  $\mu > 0$ , be the Wiener process with negative drift. Consider  $\mathsf{P}(\sup_{t\ge 0} X(t) > x)$ ,  $x \ge 0$ . To motivate it, calculate the following run probability in risk theory. Let  $x \ge 0$  be the initial capital of an insurance company. Let  $\mu$  be the volume of premium collection per time unit. Then  $\mu t$  are earned premiums at time  $t \ge 0$ . Let W(t) be the loss process (price development). Then  $Y(t) = x + t\mu - W(t)$  is the remaining capital at time t. The run probability is thus

$$\mathsf{P}(\inf_{t \ge 0} Y(t) < 0) = \mathsf{P}(x - \sup_{t \ge 0} X(t) < 0) = \mathsf{P}(\sup_{t \ge 0} X(t) > x).$$

#### Theorem 5.6.2

It holds

$$\mathsf{P}(\sup_{t \ge 0} X(t) > x) = e^{-2\mu x}, \quad x \ge 0, \ \mu > 0$$

**Proof** Let  $\tau = \tau_x^X = \inf\{t \ge 0 : X(t) = x\}$ . It holds

$$\mathsf{P}(\sup_{t \geq 0} X(t) > x) = \mathsf{P}(\tau < \infty) = \lim_{t \to +\infty} \mathsf{P}(\tau < t).$$

Compute this limit. For that, introduce the process  $Y = \{Y(t), t \ge 0\}$ ,

$$Y(t) = \exp\left\{uX(t) - t\left(\frac{u^2}{2} - \mu u\right)\right\}, \quad t \ge 0,$$

 $u \ge 0$  fixed. It can easily be shown that Y is a martingale.  $\tau' = \tau \wedge t$  is a finite stopping time w.r.t.  $\{\mathcal{F}_t^X, t \ge 0\}$ . By Corollary 5.4.1,  $\mathsf{E}Y(\tau') = \mathsf{E}Y(0) = e^0 = 1$ . On the other hand,

$$1 = \mathsf{E}(Y(\tau')) = \mathsf{E}(Y(\tau')\mathbf{1}(\tau < t)) + \mathsf{E}(Y(\tau')\mathbf{1}(\tau \ge t)) = \mathsf{E}(Y(\tau)\mathbf{1}(\tau < t)) + \mathsf{E}(Y(\tau')\mathbf{1}(\tau \ge t)).$$

If we can show that

$$\lim_{t \to +\infty} \mathsf{E}(Y(\tau')\mathbf{1}(\tau \ge t)) = 0, \tag{5.6.1}$$

then  $\lim_{t \to +\infty} \mathsf{E}(Y(\tau) \mathbb{1}(\tau < t)) = 1$ . Since  $Y(\tau) = \exp\left\{ux - \tau\left(\frac{u^2}{2} - \mu u\right)\right\}$ , it follows

$$\lim_{t \to +\infty} \mathsf{E}\left[\exp\left\{-\tau\left(\frac{u^2}{2} - u\mu\right)\right\}\mathbf{1}(\tau < t)\right] = e^{-ux},$$

and for  $u = 2\mu$  it holds

$$\lim_{t \to +\infty} \mathsf{E}\left[e^0 \mathbf{1}(\tau < t)\right] = \lim_{t \to +\infty} \mathsf{P}(\tau < t) = e^{-2\mu x}.$$

Hence,  $\mathsf{P}(\sup_{t\geq 0} X(t) > x) = e^{-2\mu x}$ . Now let us prove (5.6.1). By Corollary 3.3.2, it is known that

$$\frac{W(t)}{t} \xrightarrow{a.s.} 0, \quad (t \to +\infty).$$

Hence,

$$\lim_{t \to \infty} \frac{X(t)}{t} = \lim_{t \to \infty} \left( \frac{W(t)}{t} - \mu \right) = -\mu$$

 $\Rightarrow X(t) \stackrel{a.s.}{\rightarrow} -\infty, (t \to \infty).$  Then,

$$Y(\tau')\mathbf{1}(\tau \ge t) = \exp\{2\mu X(t)\}\mathbf{1}(\tau \ge t) \xrightarrow{a.s.} 0 \quad (t \to \infty)$$

By Lebesgue's theorem, it holds  $\mathsf{E}[Y(\tau')1(\tau \ge t)] \to 0, \ (t \to +\infty).$ 

# 5.7 Additional Exercises

#### Exercise 5.7.1

Let  $X, Y : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}$  be arbitrary random variables on  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$  with

$$\mathsf{E}|X| < \infty, \quad \mathsf{E}|Y| < \infty, \quad \mathsf{E}|XY| < \infty,$$

and let  $\mathcal{G} \subset \mathcal{F}$  be an arbitrary sub- $\sigma$ -Algebra of  $\mathcal{F}$ . Then it holds

(a) 
$$\mathsf{E}(X|\{\emptyset,\Omega\}) = \mathsf{E}X, \mathsf{E}(X|\mathcal{F}) = X,$$

(b)  $\mathsf{E}(aX + bY|\mathcal{G}) = a\mathsf{E}(X|\mathcal{G}) + b\mathsf{E}(Y|\mathcal{G})$  for arbitrary  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ ,

- (c)  $\mathsf{E}(X|\mathcal{G}) \leq \mathsf{E}(Y|\mathcal{G})$ , if  $X \leq Y$ ,
- (d)  $\mathsf{E}(XY|\mathcal{G}) = Y\mathsf{E}(X|\mathcal{G})$ , if Y is a  $(\mathcal{G}, \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}))$ -measurable random variable,
- (e)  $\mathsf{E}(\mathsf{E}(X|\mathcal{G}_2)|\mathcal{G}_1) = \mathsf{E}(X|\mathcal{G}_1)$ , if  $\mathcal{G}_1$  and  $\mathcal{G}_2$  are sub- $\sigma$ -algebras of  $\mathcal{F}$  with  $\mathcal{G}_1 \subset \mathcal{G}_2$ ,
- (f)  $\mathsf{E}(X|\mathcal{G}) = \mathsf{E}X$ , if the  $\sigma$ -algebra  $\mathcal{G}$  and  $\sigma(X) = X^{-1}(\mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}))$  are independent, i.e., if  $\mathsf{P}(A \cap A') = \mathsf{P}(A)\mathsf{P}(A')$  for arbitrary  $A \in \mathcal{G}$  and  $A' \in \sigma(X)$ .
- (g)  $\mathsf{E}(f(X)|\mathcal{G}) \ge f(\mathsf{E}(X|\mathcal{G}))$ , if  $f : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$  is a convex function, such that  $\mathsf{E}|f(X)| < \infty$ .

#### Exercise 5.7.2

Look at the two random variables X and Y on the probability space  $([-1,1], \mathcal{B}([-1,1]), \frac{1}{2}\nu)$ with  $\mathsf{E}|X| < \infty$ , where  $\nu$  is the Lebesgue measure on [-1,1]. Determine  $\sigma(Y)$  and a version of the conditional expectation  $\mathsf{E}(X|Y)$  for the following random variables:

- (a)  $Y(\omega) = \omega^5$  (Hint: Show first that  $\sigma(Y) = \mathcal{B}([-1,1])$ )
- (b)  $Y(\omega) = (-1)^k$  for  $\omega \in \left[\frac{k-3}{2}, \frac{k-2}{2}\right)$ ,  $k = 1, \dots, 4$  and Y(1) = 1(Hint: It holds  $\mathsf{E}(X|B) = \frac{\mathsf{E}(X1_B)}{\mathsf{P}(B)}$  for  $B \in \sigma(Y)$  with  $\mathsf{P}(B) > 0$ )
- (c) Calculate the distribution of  $\mathsf{E}(X|Y)$  in (a) and (b), if  $X \sim U[-1, 1]$ .

#### Exercise 5.7.3

Let X and Y be random variables on a probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$ . The conditional variance  $\mathsf{Var}(Y|X)$  is defined by

$$\mathsf{Var}(Y|X) = \mathsf{E}((Y - \mathsf{E}(Y|X))^2|X).$$

Show that

$$\operatorname{Var} Y = \mathsf{E}(\operatorname{Var}(Y|X)) + \operatorname{Var}(\mathsf{E}(Y|X)).$$

#### Exercise 5.7.4

Let now S and  $\tau$  be stopping times w.r.t. the filtration  $\{\mathcal{F}_t, t \geq 0\}$ . Show:

- (a)  $A \cap \{S \leq \tau\} \in \mathcal{F}_{\tau} \ \forall A \in \mathcal{F}_{S}$
- (b)  $\mathcal{F}_{\min\{S,\tau\}} = \mathcal{F}_S \cap \mathcal{F}_{\tau}$
- **Exercise 5.7.5** (a) Let  $\{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a martingale. Show that  $\mathsf{E}X(t) = \mathsf{E}X(0)$  holds for all  $t \ge 0$ .
  - (b) Let  $\{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be a sub- resp. supermartingale. Show that  $\mathsf{E}X(t) \ge \mathsf{E}X(0)$  resp.  $\mathsf{E}X(t) \le \mathsf{E}X(0)$  holds for all  $t \ge 0$ .

#### Exercise 5.7.6

Let the stochastic process  $X = \{X(t), t \ge 0\}$  be adapted and càdlàg. Show that

$$\mathsf{P}(\sup_{0 \le v \le t} X(v) > x) \le \frac{\mathsf{E}X(t)^2}{x^2 + \mathsf{E}X(t)^2}$$

holds for arbitrary x > 0 and  $t \ge 0$ , if X is a submartingale with  $\mathsf{E}X(t) = 0$  and  $\mathsf{E}X(t)^2 < \infty$ .

#### Exercise 5.7.7

Let  $X = \{X(n), n \in \mathbb{N}\}$  be a martingale. Show that the sequence of random variables  $X(\tau \wedge 1), X(\tau \wedge 2), \ldots$  is uniformly integrable for every finite stopping time  $\tau$ , if  $\mathsf{E}|X(\tau)| < \infty$  and  $\mathsf{E}(|X(n)|\mathbf{1}_{\{\tau>n\}}) \to 0$  for  $n \to \infty$ .

#### Exercise 5.7.8

Let  $S = \{S_n = a + \sum_{i=1}^n X_i, n \in \mathbb{N}\}$  be a symmetric random walk with a > 0 and  $\mathsf{P}(X_i = 1) = \mathsf{P}(X_i = -1) = 1/2$  for  $i \in \mathbb{N}$ . The random walk is stopped at the time  $\tau$ , when it exceeds or falls below one of the two values 0 and K > a for the first time, i.e.

$$\tau = \min_{k \ge 0} \{ S_k \le 0 \text{ or } S_k \ge K \}.$$

Show that  $M_n = \sum_{i=0}^n S_i - \frac{1}{3}S_n^3$  is a martingale and  $\mathsf{E}(\sum_{i=0}^\tau S_i) = \frac{1}{3}(K^2 - a^2)a + a$  holds. **Hint:** To calculate  $\mathsf{E}(M_n | \mathcal{F}_m^M)$ , n > m, you can use  $\mathsf{E}(\sum_{i=k}^l X_i)^3 = 0$ ,  $1 \le k \le l$ ,  $M_n =$ 

 $\sum_{r=0}^{m} S_r + \sum_{r=m+1}^{n} S_r - \frac{1}{3} S_n^3$  and  $S_n = S_n - S_m + S_m$ .

#### Exercise 5.7.9

Let  $\{X_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  be a discrete martingale and  $\tau$  a discrete stopping time w.r.t.  $\{\mathcal{F}_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ . Show that  $\{X_{\min\{\tau,n\}}\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  is also a martingale w.r.t.  $\{\mathcal{F}_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ .

#### Exercise 5.7.10

Let  $\{S_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  be a symmetric random walk with  $S_n = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i$  for a sequence of independent and identically distributed random variables  $X_1, X_2, \ldots$ , such that  $\mathsf{P}(X_1 = 1) = \mathsf{P}(X_1 = -1) = \frac{1}{2}$ . Let  $\tau = \inf\{n : |S_n| > \sqrt{n}\}$  and  $\mathcal{F}_n = \sigma\{X_1, \ldots, X_n\}, n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

- (a) Show that  $\tau$  is a stopping time w.r.t.  $\{F_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ .
- (b) Show that  $\{G_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  with  $G_n = S^2_{\min\{\tau,n\}} \min\{\tau,n\}$  is a martingale w.r.t.  $\{\mathcal{F}_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ . (Hint: Use exercise 5.7.9)
- (c) Show that  $|G_n| \leq 4\tau$  holds for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . (Hint: It holds  $|G_n| \leq |S_{\min\{\tau,n\}}^2| + |\min\{\tau,n\}| \leq S_{\min\{\tau,n\}}^2 + \tau$ )

# 6 Stationary Sequences of Random Variables

# 6.1 Sequences of Independent Random Variables

It is known that the series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^{\alpha}} < \infty \iff \alpha > 1,$$
$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{n^{\alpha}} < \infty \iff \alpha > 0,$$

since the drift of neighboring terms in the second series has order  $\frac{1}{n^{1+\alpha}}$ , i.e.

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{n^{\alpha}} = -1 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{1}{(2k)^{\alpha}} - \frac{1}{(2k+1)^{\alpha}} \right),$$

whereas

$$\frac{1}{(2k)^{\alpha}} - \frac{1}{(2k+1)^{\alpha}} = \frac{(2k+1)^{\alpha} - (2k)^{\alpha}}{(2k)^{\alpha}(2k+1)^{\alpha}} = \frac{\left(1 + \frac{1}{2k}\right)^{\alpha} - 1}{(2k+1)^{\alpha}} \stackrel{k \to \infty}{=} \frac{1 + \frac{\alpha}{2k} - 1 + o\left(\frac{1}{2k}\right)}{(2k+1)^{\alpha}} \\ = \frac{\alpha + o\left(1\right)}{2k(2k+1)^{\alpha}} = O\left(\frac{1}{(2k)^{\alpha+1}}\right) = O\left(\frac{1}{n^{\alpha+1}}\right), \quad n = 2k.$$

For which  $\alpha > 0$  does the series  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\delta_n}{n^{\alpha}}$  converge, where  $\delta_n$  are i.i.d. random variables with  $\mathsf{E}\delta_n = 0$ , e.g.  $\mathsf{P}(\delta_n = \pm 1) = \frac{1}{2}$ ?

More general question: Under which conditions holds  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} X_n < \infty$  a.s., where  $X_n$  are independent random variables?

It is known that for a sequence of random variables  $\{Y_n\}$  with  $Y_n \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{a.s.} Y$  it holds that  $Y_n \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{P} Y$ . The opposite is in general not true.

#### Theorem 6.1.1

Let  $X_n, n \in \mathbb{N}$  be independent random variables. If  $S_n = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{\mathsf{P}} S$ , then  $S_n \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{\mathsf{R}} S$ .

Without proof

#### Corollary 6.1.1

If the  $X_n$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  are independent random variables with  $\operatorname{Var} X_n < \infty$ ,  $\operatorname{E} X_n = 0$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \operatorname{Var} X_n < \infty$ , then  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} X_n$  converges a.s.

**Proof** Let  $S_n = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i$  for  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Prove that  $\{S_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  is a Cauchy sequence in  $L^2(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$ . Namely, for n > m it holds

$$\mathsf{E}(S_n - S_m)^2 = \|S_n - S_m\|_{L^2}^2 = \sum_{i=m+1}^n \operatorname{Var} X_i \xrightarrow[n,m\to\infty]{} 0,$$

since  $\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \operatorname{Var} X_i < \infty$ . Hence,  $\{S_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  is a Cauchy sequence in  $L^2(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$ . Then

$$\exists S = \lim_{n \to \infty} S_n = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} X_i$$

in the mean square sense and thus  $S_n \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{P} S$ . The statement of the corollary then follows from Theorem 6.1.1.

#### Corollary 6.1.2

If  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n^2 < \infty$ , where  $\{a_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  is a deterministic sequence, and  $\{\delta_n\}$  is a sequence of i.i.d. random variables with  $\mathsf{E}\delta_n = 0$ ,  $\mathsf{Var}\,\delta_n = \sigma^2 < \infty$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , then the sequence  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \delta_n$  converges a.s.

#### Exercise 6.1.1

Derive Corollary 6.1.2 from Corollary 6.1.1.

In our motivating example  $\delta_n$  i.i.d.,  $\mathsf{E}\delta_n = 0$ ,  $\mathsf{Var}\,\delta_n = \sigma^2 > 0$  (e.g.  $\mathsf{P}(\delta_n = \pm 1) = \frac{1}{2}$ ),  $a_n = \frac{1}{n^{\alpha}}, n \in \mathbb{N}$ .  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\delta_n}{n^{\alpha}} < \infty$ , if  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^{2\alpha}} < \infty$ , i.e. for  $\alpha > \frac{1}{2}$ .

#### Corollary 6.1.3 (Three-Series-Theorem):

Let  $\{X_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  be a sequence of independent random variables with  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathsf{E}X_n$ ,  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathsf{Var} X_n < \infty$ .  $\infty$ . Then  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} X_n \overset{a.s.}{<} \infty$ .

**Proof** Let 
$$Y_n = X_n - \mathsf{E}X_n$$
, thus  $X_n = \underbrace{\mathsf{E}X_n}_{=a_n} + Y_n$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , and  $\mathsf{E}Y_n = 0$ ,  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n < \infty$  by

our assumptions. Then  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} Y_n \stackrel{a.s.}{<} \infty$  by Corollary 6.1.1, since  $\operatorname{Var} X_n = \operatorname{Var} Y_n$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \operatorname{Var} X_n < \infty \Rightarrow \sum_n X_n = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} Y_n \stackrel{a.s.}{<} \infty$ .

# 6.2 Stationarity in the Strict Sense and Ergodic Theory

#### 6.2.1 Basic Ideas

Let  $\{X_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  be a stationary in the strict sense sequence of random variables, i.e. for all  $n, k \in \mathbb{N}$  the distribution of  $(X_n, \ldots, X_{n+k})^T$  is independent of  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . In particular, this means that all  $X_n$  are identically distributed. In the language of Kolmogorov's theorem:

$$\mathsf{P}((X_n, X_{n+1}, \ldots) \in B) = \mathsf{P}((X_1, X_2, \ldots) \in B),$$

for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and all  $B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}^{\infty})$ , where  $R^{\infty} = \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \times \ldots \times \ldots$ 

- **Example 6.2.1 (Stationary sequences of random variables):** 1. Let  $\{X_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  be a sequence of i.i.d. random variables, then  $\{X_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  is stationary.
  - 2. Let  $Y_n = a_0 X_n + \ldots + a_k X_{n+k}$ , where k is a fixed natural number,  $\{X_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  from 1),  $a_0, \ldots, a_k \in \mathbb{R}$  (fixed),  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .  $Y_n$  are not independent anymore but identically distributed. The sequence  $\{Y_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  is stationary.
  - 3. Let  $Y_n = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} a_j X_{n+j}$  for arbitrary  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . The sequence  $\{a_j\}_{j\in\mathbb{N}_0}$  is a sequence of real numbers with  $\sum_{j=0}^{\infty} a_j^2 < \infty$  and  $\{X_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  are i.i.d. random variables with  $\mathsf{E}X_n = 0$ ,  $\mathsf{Var} X_n < \infty$  (compare Corollary 6.1.2). It is obvious that  $\{Y_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  is a stationary sequence. (This construction is important for autoregressive time series (AR processes), e.g. in econometrics).

- 6 Stationary Sequences of Random Variables
  - 4. Let  $Y_n = g(X_n, X_{n+1}, \ldots), n \in \mathbb{N}, g : \mathbb{R}^\infty \to \mathbb{R}$  measurable,  $\{X_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  as in 1). Then  $\{Y_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  is stationary.
- **Remark 6.2.1** 1. An arbitrary stationary sequence of random variables  $X = \{X_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  can be extended to a stationary sequence  $\bar{X} = \{X_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}}$ . In fact, the finite dimensional distribution of  $\bar{X}$  can be defined as:

$$(X_n,\ldots,X_{n+k}) \stackrel{d}{=} (X_1,\ldots,X_{k+1}), \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}, \ k \in \mathbb{N}.$$

Therefore, by Kolmogorov's theorem, there exists a probability space and a sequence  $\{Y_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$  with the above distribution. We set  $\bar{X} = \{Y_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ , it hence follows that  $\{Y_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \stackrel{d}{=} \{X_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ .

2. We define a shift of coordinates. Let  $x \in \mathbb{R}_{-\infty}^{\infty}$ ,  $x = (x_k, k \in \mathbb{Z})$ . Define the mapping  $\theta : \mathbb{R}_{-\infty}^{\infty} \to R_{-\infty}^{\infty}$ ,  $(\theta x)_k = x_{k+1}$  (shift of the coordinates by 1),  $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ . If  $\theta$  is considered on  $\mathbb{R}_{-\infty}^{\infty}$ , then it is bijective and the inverse mapping would be  $(\theta^{-1}x)_k = x_{k-1}$ ,  $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Let now  $X = \{X_n, n \in \mathbb{Z}\}$  be a stationary sequence of random variables. Let  $\overline{X} = \theta X$ ,  $\tilde{X} = \theta^{-1}X$ . It is obvious that  $\overline{X}$  and  $\tilde{X}$  are again stationary and  $\overline{X} \stackrel{d}{=} X \stackrel{d}{=} \tilde{X}$ , i.e.,

$$\mathsf{P}(\theta^{-1}X \in B) = \mathsf{P}(\theta X \in B) = \mathsf{P}(X \in B), \quad B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}^{\infty}_{-\infty}).$$

 $\theta$  is called a *measure preserving map*. There are also other maps which have a measure preserving effect.

#### Definition 6.2.1

Let  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$  be an arbitrary probability space. A map  $T : \Omega \to \Omega$  is called *measure preserving*, if

1. T is measurable, i.e.  $T^{-1}A \in \mathcal{F}$  for all  $A \in \mathcal{F}$ ,

2. 
$$\mathsf{P}(T^{-1}A) = \mathsf{P}(A), \quad A \in \mathcal{F}.$$

#### Lemma 6.2.1

Let T be a measure preserving mapping and let  $X_0$  be a random variable. Define  $X_n(\omega) = X_0(T^n(\omega)), \omega \in \Omega, n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Then the sequence of random variables  $X = \{X_0, X_1, X_2, \ldots\}$  is stationary.

#### **Proof** Let

$$X(\omega) = (X_0(\omega), X_0(T(\omega)), X_0(T^2(\omega)), \ldots),$$
  
$$\theta X(\omega) = (X_0(T(\omega)), X_0(T^2(\omega)), X_0(T^3(\omega)), \ldots),$$

 $B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}^{\infty}), A = \{\omega \in \Omega : X(\omega) \in B\}, A_1 = \{\omega \in \Omega : \theta X(\omega) \in B\}.$  Therefore  $\omega \in A_1 \Leftrightarrow T(\omega) \in A$ . Since  $\mathsf{P}(T^{-1}A) = \mathsf{P}(A)$ , it holds  $\mathsf{P}(A_1) = \mathsf{P}(A)$ . For  $A_n = \{\omega \in \Omega : \theta^n X(\omega) \in B\}$  the same holds,  $\mathsf{P}(A_n) = \mathsf{P}(A), n \in \mathbb{N}$  (Induction). Hence the sequence X is stationary.  $\Box$ 

The sequence X in Lemma 6.2.1 is called a sequence generated by T.

#### Definition 6.2.2

A map  $T: \Omega \to \Omega$  is called *measure preserving in both directions*, if

1. T is bijective and  $T(\Omega) = \Omega$ ,

- 2. T and  $T^{-1}$  are measurable,
- 3.  $\mathsf{P}(T^{-1}A) = \mathsf{P}(A), A \in \mathcal{F}$ , and therefore  $\mathsf{P}(TA) = \mathsf{P}(A)$ .

Thus, exactly as in Lemma 6.2.1, we can construct stationary sequences of random variables with time parameter  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ :

$$X(\omega) = \{X_0(T^n(\omega))\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}}, \quad \omega \in \Omega,$$

where T is a measure preserving map (in both directions),  $X_0(T^0(\omega)) = X_0(\omega)$ ,  $(T^0 = Id)$ .

#### Lemma 6.2.2

For an arbitrary stationary sequence of random variables  $X = (X_0, X_1, ...)$  there exists a measure preserving map T and a random variable  $Y_0$  such that  $Y(\omega) = \{Y_0(T^n(\omega))\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  has the same distribution as  $X: X \stackrel{d}{=} Y$ . The same statement holds for sequences with time parameter  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$  and measure preserving maps in both directions.

**Proof** Consider the canonical probability space  $(\mathbb{R}^{\infty}, \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}^{\infty}), \mathsf{P}_X), Y(\omega) = \omega, \omega \in \mathbb{R}^{\infty}, Y_0(\omega) = \omega_0$  for  $\omega = (\omega_0, \omega_1, \omega_2, \ldots) \in \mathbb{R}^{\infty}, T = \theta$ . Thus, Y is constructed since  $\mathsf{P}_X(A) = \mathsf{P}_X(Y \in A) = \mathsf{P}_Y(A), A \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}^{\infty})$ .

- **Example 6.2.2 (Measure preserving maps):** 1. Let  $\Omega = \{\omega_1, \ldots, \omega_k\}, k \ge 2, \mathcal{F} = 2^{\Omega}, P(\omega_i) = \frac{1}{k}, i = 1, \ldots, k$ , be a Laplace probability space. Then  $T\omega_i = \omega_{i+1}$  for all  $i = 1, \ldots, k 1, T\omega_k = \omega_1$ , is measure preserving.
  - 2. Let  $\Omega = [0,1)$ ,  $\mathcal{F} = \mathcal{B}([0,1))$ ,  $\mathsf{P} = \nu_1$  Lebesgue-measure on [0,1). Let  $T\omega = (\omega + s) \mod 1$ ,  $s \ge 0$ . T is measure preserving in both directions.

Stationary sequences of random variables, which in these examples can be generated by the map T, are mostly deterministic resp. cyclic. In Example 1) we can consider a random variable  $X_0 : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}$ , such that  $X(\omega_i) = x_i$  are all pairwise distinct. Therefore  $X_n(\omega) = X_0(T^n(\omega))$  uniquely defines the value of  $X_{n+1}(\omega) = X_0(T^{n+1}(\omega))$ , for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

#### Remark 6.2.2

Measure preserving maps play an important role in physics. There, T is interpreted as the change of state of a physical system and the measure P can e.g. be the volume. (Example: T – change of temperature, measure P – volume of the gas.) Therefore the ergodic theory to be developed can be immediately transferred to some physical processes.

#### Theorem 6.2.1 (Poincarè):

If T is a measure preserving map on  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$ ,  $A \in \mathcal{F}$ , then for almost all  $\omega \in A$  the relation  $\{T^n(\omega) \in A\}$  holds for infinitely many  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

That means, the trajectory  $\{T^n(\omega), n \in \mathbb{N}\}\$  returns to A infinitely often for almost all  $\omega \in \Omega$ ,  $\mathsf{P}(A) > 0$ .

**Proof** Let  $N = \{\omega \in A : T^n(\omega) \notin A, \forall n \geq 1\}$ . It is obvious that  $N \in \mathcal{F}$ , since  $\{\omega \in \Omega : T^n(\omega) \notin A\} \in \mathcal{F}$  for all  $n \geq 1$ .  $N \cap T^{-n}N = \emptyset$  for all  $n \geq 1$ . In fact, if  $\omega \in N \cap T^{-n_0}N$  for some  $n_0 \in \mathbb{N}$ , then  $\omega \in A$ ,  $T^n(\omega) \notin A$  for all  $n \geq 1$ ,  $\omega_1 = T^{n_0}(\omega)$ ,  $\omega_1 \in N$ . Hence it follows that  $\omega_1 \in A$ , i.e.  $T^{n_0}(\omega) \in A$ . That is a contradiction with  $\omega \in N$ . For arbitrary  $m \in \mathbb{N}$  it holds

$$T^{-m}N \cap T^{-(n+m)}N = T^{-m}(N \cap T^{-n}N) = T^{-m}(\emptyset) = \emptyset$$

#### 6 Stationary Sequences of Random Variables

Hence the sets  $T^{-n}N$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , are pairwise disjoint, belong to  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathsf{P}(T^{-n}N) = \mathsf{P}(N) = a \ge 0$  holds. Then

$$1 \ge \mathsf{P}(\cup_{n \ge 0} T^{-n} N) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathsf{P}(T^{-n} N) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a,$$

which is possible only if a = 0, i.e., P(N) = 0. Hence it follows that for almost all  $\omega \in A$  $(\omega \in A \setminus N)$  there exists a  $n_1 = n_1(\omega)$ , such that  $T^{n_1}(\omega) \in A$ . Now use  $T^k$  be instead of T,  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  in the above reasoning,  $N_k = \{\omega \in A : T^{kn}(\omega) \notin A, \forall n \ge 1\}$ . It holds  $P(N_k) = 0$  and for all  $\omega \in A \setminus N_k$  there exists  $n_k = n_k(\omega)$  such that  $(T^k)^{n_k}(\omega) \in A$ . Since  $kn_k \ge k$  it follows for almost all  $\omega \in A$  that  $T^n(\omega) \in A$  for infinitely many n.

#### Corollary 6.2.1

Let  $X \ge 0$  be a random variable,  $A = \{\omega \in \Omega : X(\omega) > 0\}$ . Then it holds for almost all  $\omega \in A$  that  $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} X(T^n(\omega)) = +\infty$ , where T is a measure preserving map.

#### Exercise 6.2.1

Prove it.

#### Remark 6.2.3

The proof of Theorem 6.2.1 holds for the sets  $A \in \mathcal{F} : \mathsf{P}(A) \ge 0$ . If however  $\mathsf{P}(A) = 0$ , it is possible that  $A \setminus N = \emptyset$  and thus the statement of the theorem is trivial.

As an example we consider  $\Omega = [0, 1)$ ,  $\mathcal{F} = \mathcal{B}_{[0,1)}$ ,  $\mathsf{P} = \nu_1$  – Lebesgue-measure,  $T(\omega) = (\omega + s) \mod 1$ ,  $s \notin \mathbb{Q}$ . Set  $A = \{\omega_0\}$ ,  $\omega_0 \in \Omega$ . Then  $T^n(\omega_0) \neq \omega_0$  holds for all n, because otherwise there exists  $k, m \in \mathbb{N}$ , such that  $\omega_0 + ks - m = \omega_0$  and hence follows  $s = \frac{m}{k} \in \mathbb{Q}$ . Thus we get a contradiction.

#### 6.2.2 Mixing Properties and Ergodicity

Here we study the dependence structure in a stationary sequence of random variables, which is generated by a measure preserving map T.

Let  $X = \{X_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  be a stationary sequence (in the strict sense) of random variables. Then there exists a measure preserving map  $T : \Omega \to \Omega$  such that  $X_n(\omega) \stackrel{d}{=} X_0(T^n(\omega))$  and  $X_n \stackrel{d}{=} X_0$ , and thus  $X_0$  gives the marginal distribution of the sequence X. In turn, the map T is responsible for the dependence within X (it indicates the properties of multidimensional distributions). We shall therefore now examine the dependence properties of X generated by T.

- **Definition 6.2.3** 1. Event  $A \in \mathcal{F}$  is called *invariant w.r.t.* (a measure preserving map)  $T: \Omega \to \Omega$ , if  $T^{-1}A = A$ .
  - 2. Event  $A \in \mathcal{F}$  is called *almost invariant w.r.t.* T, if  $\mathsf{P}(T^{-1}A \triangle A) = 0$ . Here  $\triangle$  is the symmetric difference of sets.

Exercise 6.2.2

Show that the set of all (almost) invariant events w.r.t. T is a  $\sigma$ -algebra  $J(J^*)$ .

#### Lemma 6.2.3

Let  $A \in J^*$ . Then there exists  $B \in J$  such that  $\mathsf{P}(A \triangle B) = 0$ .

**Proof** Let  $B = \limsup_{n \to \infty} T^{-n}A = \bigcap_{n=1}^{\infty} \bigcup_{k=n}^{\infty} T^{-k}A$ . It is to be shown that  $B \in J$ ,  $\mathsf{P}(A \triangle B) = 0$ . It is obvious that  $T^{-1}(B) = \limsup_{n \to \infty} T^{-(n+1)}A = B$  and hence  $B \in J$ . It is easy to see that  $A \triangle B \subset \bigcup_{k=0}^{\infty} (T^{-k}A \triangle T^{-(k+1)}A)$ . Since  $\mathsf{P}(T^{-k}A \triangle T^{-(k+1)}A) = 0$  for all  $k \ge 1$  due to  $A \in J^*$ , it follows that  $\mathsf{P}(A \triangle B) = 0$ . **Definition 6.2.4** 1. The measure preserving map  $T : \Omega \to \Omega$  is called *ergodic* if for every  $A \in J$ 

$$\mathsf{P}(A) = \left\{ \begin{array}{c} 0\\ 1 \end{array} \right. .$$

2. The stationary sequence of random variables  $X = \{X_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  is called *ergodic* if the measure preserving map  $T : \Omega \to \Omega$ , which generates X, is ergodic.

#### Lemma 6.2.4

The measure preserving map T is ergodic if and only if the probability of almost invariant sets

$$\mathsf{P}(A) = \begin{cases} 0 \\ 1 & \text{for all } A \in J^*. \end{cases}$$

**Proof**  $", \neq "$ 

Obvious, since arbitrary invariant set are also almost invariant, i.e.  $J \subset J^*$ . "

Let T be ergodic and  $A \in J^*$ . According to Lemma 6.2.3 it follows that there exists  $B \in J$  such that  $\mathsf{P}(A \triangle B) = 0$ . Therefore  $\mathsf{P}(A) = \mathsf{P}(A \cap B) = \mathsf{P}(B)$ . Since T is ergodic and  $B \in J$  it follows

$$\mathsf{P}(A) = \mathsf{P}(B) = \begin{cases} 0\\ 1 \end{cases}.$$

#### Definition 6.2.5

A random variable  $Y : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}$  is called *(almost) invariant* w.r.t. a measure preserving map  $T : \Omega \to \Omega$  if  $Y(\omega) = Y(T(\omega))$  for (almost) all  $\omega \in \Omega$ .

#### Theorem 6.2.2

Let  $T: \Omega \to \Omega$  be a measure preserving map. The following statements are equivalent:

- 1. T is ergodic.
- 2. If Y is almost invariant w.r.t. T then Y = const a.s.
- 3. If Y is invariant w.r.t. T then Y = const a.s.

**Proof** 1) 
$$\Rightarrow$$
 2)  $\Rightarrow$  3)  $\Rightarrow$  1)

 $1) \Rightarrow 2)$ 

Let T be ergodic and Y – almost invariant. It is to be shown that  $Y(\omega) = const$  for almost all  $\omega \in \Omega$ .  $Y(T(\omega)) = Y(\omega)$  almost surely. Let  $A_v = \{\omega \in \Omega : Y(\omega) \le v\}, v \in \mathbb{R}$ . Hence it follows that  $A_v \in J^*$  for all  $v \in \mathbb{R}$  and by Lemma 6.2.4

$$\mathsf{P}(A_v) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for all } v. \\ 1 & \end{cases}$$

Let  $c = \sup \{v : \mathsf{P}(A_v) = 0\}$ . Show that  $\mathsf{P}(Y = c) = 1$ . It holds  $A_v \uparrow \Omega, v \to \infty, A_v \downarrow \emptyset, v \to -\infty \Rightarrow |c| < \infty$ . Thus

$$\mathsf{P}(Y < c) = \mathsf{P}\left(\bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} \left\{Y \le c - \frac{1}{n}\right\}\right) \le \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \underbrace{\mathsf{P}\left(A_{c-\frac{1}{n}}\right)}_{=0} = 0,$$

by definition of c. Analogously one proves that P(Y > c) = 0 and hence P(Y = c) = 1.  $2) \Rightarrow 3$ ) is obvious.

3)  $\Rightarrow$  1) It is to be shown that T is ergodic, i.e.  $\mathsf{P}(A) = \begin{cases} 0 \\ 1 \end{cases}$  for all  $A \in J$ .

Let  $Y = 1_A$ . It is invariant w.r.t. T, hence it follows that  $1_A = const = \begin{cases} 0 \\ 1 \end{cases}$  and  $\mathsf{P}(A) = \begin{cases} 0 \\ 1 \end{cases}$ . 

- 1. The statements of Theorem 6.2.2 stay true if you demand 3) for a.s. **Remark 6.2.4** bounded random variables Y.
  - 2. If Y is invariant w.r.t. T then  $Y_n = \min\{Y, n\}, n \in \mathbb{N}$ , is also invariant w.r.t. T.
- 1. Let  $\Omega = \{\omega_1, \dots, \omega_d\}, \ \mathcal{F} = 2^{\Omega}, \ \mathsf{P}(\{\omega_i\}) = \frac{1}{d}, \ i = 1, \dots, d.$  Let  $T(\omega_i) =$ Example 6.2.3  $\omega_{i+1}, i = 1, \ldots, d-1, \omega_d \xrightarrow{T} \omega_1$ . T is obviously ergodic and hence any invariant random variable is constant.
  - 2. Let  $\Omega = [0,1), \mathcal{F} = \mathcal{B}_{[0,1)}, \mathsf{P} = \nu_1, T(\omega) = (\omega + s) \mod 1$ . Show that T is ergodic  $\iff$  $s \notin \mathbb{Q}$ .

**Proof** ",  $\Leftarrow$  "

Let  $s \notin \mathbb{Q}$ , Y be an arbitrary invariant random variable. Let Y be bounded a.s. so that  $EY^2 < \infty$  (compare Remark 6.2.4, 1)). We decompose the random variable Y into a Fourierseries. The Fourier series of Y is  $Y(\omega) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n e^{2\pi i n w}$ . We want to show that  $a_n = 0$ , n > 0, and hence follows that  $Y(\omega) = a_0$  a.s.. Then T is ergodic by Theorem 6.2.2. Indeed, by definition of T,  $T(\omega) = \omega + s - k, k \in \mathbb{N}$ . Since T is measure preserving and since Y is invariant w.r.t. T it holds

$$a_n = < Y(\omega), e^{2\pi i n w} >_{L^2} = \mathsf{E}(Y(\omega)e^{-2\pi i n w}) = \mathsf{E}(Y(T(\omega))e^{-2\pi i n w})e^{-2\pi i n s} = e^{-2\pi i n s}a_n + e$$

Therefore if  $s \notin \mathbb{Q}$  then  $a_n = 0$ .  $,,\Rightarrow$ 

If  $s = \frac{m}{n} \in \mathbb{Q}$ , then T is not ergodic, i.e. there exists  $A \in J$  such that 0 < P(A) < 1. Indeed, set  $A = \bigcup_{k=0}^{n-1} \left\{ \omega \in \Omega : \frac{2k}{2n} \le \omega < \frac{2k+1}{2n} \right\}$ . It is clear that  $\mathsf{P}(A) = \frac{1}{2}$ . A is invariant, since  $T(A) = \left(A + \frac{2m}{2n}\right) \mod 1 = A.$ 

1. The measure preserving map  $T: \Omega \to \Omega$  is called *mixing (on average)*, Definition 6.2.6 if for all  $A_1, A_2 \in \mathcal{F}$  it holds:  $\mathsf{P}(A_1 \cap T^{-n}A_2) \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{n \to \infty} \mathsf{P}(A_1)\mathsf{P}(A_2)$  $(\frac{1}{n}\sum_{k=1}^{n}\mathsf{P}(A_1 \cap T^{-k}A_2) \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{n \to \infty} \mathsf{P}(A_1)\mathsf{P}(A_2)$ , respectively), i.e., by repeated application of T to  $A_2$ ,  $A_1$  and  $A_2$  are getting asymptotically independent.

2. Let  $X = \{X_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}_0}$  be a stationary sequence of random variables which are generated by a random variable  $X_0$  and a measure preserving map T. X is called weakly dependent (on average), if the random variables  $X_k$  and  $X_{k+n}$  are getting asymptotically independent for  $n \to \infty$ , i.e. for all  $B_1, B_2 \in \mathcal{B}_{\mathbb{R}}$  and  $k \in \mathbb{N}_0$ 

$$\mathsf{P}(X_k \in B_1, X_{k+n} \in B_2) \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} \mathsf{P}(X_0 \in B_1) \mathsf{P}(X_0 \in B_2)$$
$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^n \mathsf{P}(X_0 \in B_1, X_k \in B_2) \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} \mathsf{P}(X_0 \in B_1) \mathsf{P}(X_0 \in B_2), \text{ respectively} \right).$$

#### Theorem 6.2.3

Any stationary sequence of random variables  $X = \{X_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}_0}$ , generated by the measure preserving map T, is weakly dependent (on average) if and only if T is mixing (on average).

**Proof** We prove the equivalence of mixing and weak dependence. The proof of the equivalence of mixing and weak dependence on average is analogous and left as an exercise to the reader.  $, \notin$  "If T is mixing we have to show that  $X = \{X_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}_0}$  with  $X_n(\omega) = X_0(T^n(\omega)), n \in \mathbb{N}_0$  is weakly dependent. Let  $B_1, B_2 \in \mathcal{B}_{\mathbb{R}}$ . W.l.o.g., choose k = 0. Then

$$\mathsf{P}(X_0 \in B_1, X_0 \circ T^n \in B_2) = \mathsf{P}(\underbrace{X_0^{-1}(B_1)}_{=A_1} \cap \underbrace{T^{-n}(X_0^{-1}(B_2))}_{=T^{-n}A_2})$$
$$\xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} \mathsf{P}(A_1)\mathsf{P}(A_2) = \mathsf{P}(X_0 \in B_1)\mathsf{P}(X_0 \in B_2).$$

 $, \Rightarrow$  "Let any  $X = \{X_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}_0}$  with  $X_n(\omega) = X_0(T^n(\omega)), n \in \mathbb{N}_0$  be weakly dependent. For any  $A_1, A_2 \in \mathcal{F}$  construct the random variable

$$X_{0}(\omega) = \begin{cases} 0, & \omega \notin A_{1} \cup A_{2} \\ 1, & \omega \in A_{1} \cap A_{2}^{c} \\ 2, & \omega \in A_{1} \cap A_{2} \\ 3, & \omega \in A_{1}^{c} \cap A_{2} \end{cases}$$

Since  $X_n(\omega) = X_0(T^n(\omega))$  yields a weakly dependent sequence, it holds

$$\mathsf{P}(A_1 \cap T^{-n}A_2) = \mathsf{P}(\{1 \le X_0 \le 2\} \cap \{X_n \ge 2\}) \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} \mathsf{P}(X_0 \in [1, 2])\mathsf{P}(X_0 \ge 2) = \mathsf{P}(A_1)\mathsf{P}(A_2).$$
  
Hence, T is mixing.

# Theorem 6.2.4

#### Let T be a measure preserving map. T is ergodic if and only if it is mixing on average.

**Proof**  $" \leftarrow "$ It is to be shown, that if T is mixing on average then T is ergodic, i.e. for all  $A \in J$  it holds  $\mathsf{P}(A) = \begin{cases} 0 \\ 1 \end{cases}. \text{ Let } A_1 \in \mathcal{F}, A_2 = A \in J. \text{ Then} \\ \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^n \mathsf{P}(A_1 \cap \underbrace{T^{-n}(A_2)}_{=A_2}) = \mathsf{P}(A_1 \cap A_2) \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} \mathsf{P}(A_1) \mathsf{P}(A_2), \text{ which is possible only if } \mathsf{P}(A_1 \cap A_2) = A_2 \end{cases}$  $\mathsf{P}(A_1)\mathsf{P}(A_2)$ . For  $A_1 = A$ , we get  $\mathsf{P}(A) = \mathsf{P}^2(A)$  and hence  $\mathsf{P}(A) = \begin{cases} 0\\ 1 \end{cases}$ .  $,, \Rightarrow$  "

Later.

Now we give the motivation for the term "mixing".

#### Theorem 6.2.5

Let  $A \in \mathcal{F}$ ,  $\mathsf{P}(A) > 0$ . The measure preserving map  $T : \Omega \to \Omega$  is ergodic (i.e. mixing on average) if and only if

$$\mathsf{P}\left(\cup_{n=0}^{\infty}T^{-n}A\right) = 1,$$

i.e. the preimages  $T^{-n}A$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}_0$  cover almost the whole  $\Omega$ .

**Proof**  $,, \Rightarrow$  "

Let  $B = \bigcup_{n=0}^{\infty} T^{-n}A$ . Obviously,  $T^{-1}B = \bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} T^{-n}A \subset B$ . Since T is measure preserving, i.e.  $\mathsf{P}(T^{-1}B) = \mathsf{P}(B)$ , it follows that  $\mathsf{P}(T^{-1}B \triangle B) = \mathsf{P}(B \setminus T^{-1}B) = \mathsf{P}(B) - \mathsf{P}(T^{-1}B) = 0$ . Hence,  $B \in J^*$  (B is almost invariant w.r.t. T) and  $\mathsf{P}(B) = \begin{cases} 0 \\ 1 \end{cases}$  by Lemma 6.2.4. Since  $\mathsf{P}(B) \ge \mathsf{P}(A) > 0 \Rightarrow \mathsf{P}(B) = 1$ . ,  $\Leftarrow$  "

Let T be non-ergodic. It is to be shown that  $\mathsf{P}(B) < 1$  for some  $A \in \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P}(A) > 0$ . If T is not ergodic, there exists  $A \in J$  such that  $0 < \mathsf{P}(A) < 1$ . Hence,  $B = \bigcup_{n=0}^{\infty} \underbrace{T^{-n}A}_{A} = A$  and hence

 $\mathsf{P}(B) < 1.$ 

#### Remark 6.2.5

So far, the fact that the random variables X are real-valued was never explicitly used. Therefore the above observations can be transferred without modifications to sequences of random elements with values in an arbitrary measurable space  $\mathcal{M}$ .

## 6.2.3 Ergodic Theorem

Let  $X = \{X_n\}_{n=0}^{\infty}$  be a sequence of random variables on the probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$ . If  $X_n$  are i.i.d. then by the law of large numbers

$$\frac{1}{n}\sum_{k=0}^{n-1}X_k\xrightarrow[n\to\infty]{a.s.}\mathsf{E}X_0,\quad \text{ if }\mathsf{E}|X_0|<\infty.$$

We want to prove a similar statement about stationary sequences.

### Theorem 6.2.6 (Ergodic theorem, Birkhoff-Khinchin):

Let  $X = \{X_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}_0}$  be a stationary sequence of random variables generated by the random variable  $X_0$  and a measure preserving map  $T : \Omega \to \Omega$ . Let J be the  $\sigma$ -algebra of the invariant sets w.r.t. T and  $\mathsf{E}|X_0| < \infty$ . Then

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_k \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{a.s.} \mathsf{E}(X_0 \mid J).$$

If X is weakly dependent on average (i.e. T is ergodic), then  $\mathsf{E}(X_0 \mid J) = \mathsf{E}(X_0)$ .

#### Lemma 6.2.5

Let  $\{X_n\}$ , T be as above. Let  $S_n(\omega) = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_0(T^k(\omega)), M_n(\omega) = \max\{0, S_1(\omega), \dots, S_n(\omega)\}$ . Under the conditions of Theorem 6.2.6 it holds

$$\mathsf{E}(X_0 1(M_n > 0)) \ge 0, \quad n \in \mathbb{N}.$$

**Proof** Let  $\omega \in \{\omega : M_n(\omega) > 0\}$ . For all  $k \leq n$  it holds  $S_k(\omega_0) \leq M_n(\omega_0), \omega_0 \in \Omega$ . Take  $\omega_0 = T(\omega)$ . We can add  $X_0$  and get

$$X_0(\omega) + M_n(T(\omega)) \ge X_0(\omega) + S_k(T(\omega)) = S_{k+1}(\omega).$$

For k = 0, ..., n-1 it holds  $X_0(\omega) \ge S_{k+1}(\omega) - M_n(T(\omega))$ . Hence it follows that  $X_0(\omega) \ge \max\{S_1(\omega), ..., S_n(\omega)\} - M_n(T(\omega))$ . Since  $M_n(\omega) > 0$ , then  $M_n = \max\{S_1, ..., S_n\}$ . It fol-= $M_n(\omega)$ 

lows that

$$\mathsf{E}(X_0 1(M_n > 0)) \ge \mathsf{E}((M_n - M_n(T)) 1(M_n > 0)) \ge \mathsf{E}(M_n - M_n(T(\omega))) = 0,$$

since T is measure preserving.

**Proof of the Theorem 6.2.6** W.l.o.g. let  $\mathsf{E}(X_0 \mid J) = 0$ , otherwise replace  $X_0$  by  $X_0 - \mathsf{E}(X \mid J)$ . It has to be shown:  $\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{S_n}{n} \stackrel{a.s.}{=} 0$ ,  $S_n = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_k$ . It is enough to show that

$$0 \leq \liminf_{n \to \infty} \frac{S_n}{n} \leq \limsup_{n \to \infty} \frac{S_n}{n} \leq 0$$

with probability one. First we show that  $\overline{S} = \limsup_{n \to \infty} \frac{S_n}{n} \leq 0$ . It is enough to show that  $\mathsf{P}(\overline{S} > \varepsilon) = 0$  for all  $\varepsilon > 0$ . Let  $X_0^* = (X_0 - \varepsilon) \mathbf{1}_{A_{\varepsilon}}, S_k^* = \sum_{j=0}^{k-1} X_0^*(T^j(\omega)),$  $M_k^* = \max\{0, S_1^*, \dots, S_k^*\}$ . By Lemma 6.2.5, it follows  $\mathsf{E}(X_0^* \mathbf{1}(M_n^* > 0)) \geq 0$  for all  $n \geq 1$ . But

$$\{M_n^* > 0\} = \left\{\max_{1 \le k \le n} S_k^* > 0\right\} \uparrow_{n \to \infty} \left\{\sup_{k \ge 1} S_k^* > 0\right\} = \left\{\sup_{k \ge 1} \frac{S_k^*}{k} > 0\right\} = \left\{\sup_{k \ge 1} \frac{S_k}{k} > \varepsilon\right\} \cap A_{\varepsilon} = A_{\varepsilon}$$

since  $\left\{\sup_{k\geq 1}\frac{S_k}{k} > \varepsilon\right\} \supset \left\{\overline{S} > \varepsilon\right\} = A_{\varepsilon}$ . By Lebesgue's theorem  $0 \leq \mathsf{E}(X_0^* \mathsf{1}(M_n^* > 0)) \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} \mathsf{E}(X_0^* \mathsf{1}_{A_{\varepsilon}})$ , since  $\mathsf{E}|X_0^*| \leq \mathsf{E}|X_0| + \varepsilon$ . Hence

$$0 \leq \mathsf{E}(X_0^* \mathbf{1}_{A_{\varepsilon}}) = \mathsf{E}((X_0 - \varepsilon)\mathbf{1}_{A_{\varepsilon}}) = \mathsf{E}(X_0 \mathbf{1}_{A_{\varepsilon}}) - \varepsilon\mathsf{P}(A_{\varepsilon}) = \mathsf{E}(\mathsf{E}(X_0 \mathbf{1}_{A_{\varepsilon}} \mid J)) - \varepsilon\mathsf{P}(A_{\varepsilon})$$
$$= {}^1\mathsf{E}(\mathbf{1}_{A_{\varepsilon}}\underbrace{\mathsf{E}(X_0 \mid J)}_{=0}) - \varepsilon\mathsf{P}(A_{\varepsilon}) = -\varepsilon\mathsf{P}(A_{\varepsilon})$$

which means that  $\mathsf{P}(A_{\varepsilon}) \leq 0$ , i.e.  $\mathsf{P}(A_{\varepsilon}) = 0$  for all  $\varepsilon > 0$ .

In oder to show  $0 \leq \liminf_{n\to\infty} \frac{S_n}{n} = \underline{S}$  it is enough to look at  $-X_0$  instead of  $X_0$ , since  $\limsup_{n\to\infty} (-\frac{S_n}{n}) = -\liminf_{n\to\infty} (\frac{S_n}{n})$ . Since  $\mathsf{P}(-\underline{S} \leq 0) = 1$  it holds  $\mathsf{P}(\underline{S} \geq 0) = 1$ . Consider now the case if T is ergodic. Since  $Y = \mathsf{E}(X_0|J)$  is an invariant random variable by definition of J, it follows from Theorem 6.2.2,3) that Y = const a.s., i.e.,  $Y = \mathsf{E}Y = \mathsf{E}(\mathsf{E}(X_0|J)) = \mathsf{E}X_0$ .

#### Remark 6.2.6

The peculiarity of the Ergodic Theorem in comparison with the strong law of large numbers lies in the fact that the limiting value  $E(X_0 \mid J)$  is random.

$$\mathsf{E}(X_0 \mathbf{1}_{A_{\varepsilon}} | J) = \mathbf{1}_{A_{\varepsilon}} \; \mathsf{E}(X_0 | J).$$

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Since  $\bar{S} = \limsup_{n \to \infty} \frac{S_n}{n}$  is invariant w.r.t.  $T(\bar{S}(T) = \bar{S})$  then  $A_{\varepsilon} = \{\bar{S} > \varepsilon\} \in J$ , and hence  $\mathbf{1}_{A_{\varepsilon}}$  is *J*-measurable. Then

#### Example 6.2.4

We consider the probability space from Example 6.2.3 a):  $\Omega = \{\omega_1, \ldots, \omega_d\}, d = 2l \in \mathbb{N}$ . Let  $T : \Omega \to \Omega$  be defined by

$$\begin{cases} T(\omega_i) = \omega_{i+2} , \quad i = 1, \dots, d-2, \\ T(\omega_{d-1}) = \omega_1 , \\ T(\omega_d) = \omega_2 . \end{cases}$$

Let  $A_1 = \{\omega_1, \omega_3, \dots, \omega_{2l-1}\}, A_2 = \{\omega_2, \omega_4, \dots, \omega_{2l}\}$ . Since  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$  is a Laplace probability space  $(\mathsf{P}(\{\omega_i\}) = \frac{1}{d}, \text{ for all } i)$  it follows that  $\mathsf{P}(A_i) = \frac{1}{2}, i = 1, 2$ . On the other hand,  $A_1, A_2 \in J$  w.r.t. T and therefore T is not ergodic. For an arbitrary random variable  $X_0 : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}$  it holds

$$\frac{1}{n}\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_0\left(T^n(\omega)\right) \xrightarrow[n\to\infty]{} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \frac{2}{d}\sum_{j=0}^{l-1} X_0(\omega_{2j+1}), & \text{with probability } \frac{1}{2}, \text{ if } \omega \in A_1, \\ \frac{2}{d}\sum_{j=1}^{l} X_0(\omega_{2j}), & \text{with probability } \frac{1}{2}, \text{ if } \omega \in A_2. \end{array} \right.$$

**Proof of Theorem 6.2.4** It has to be shown: If  $T : \Omega \to \Omega$  is ergodic then T is mixing on average, i.e. for all  $A_1, A_2 \in \mathcal{F}$ 

$$\frac{1}{n}\sum_{k=0}^{n-1}\mathsf{P}(A_1\cap T^{-k}A_2)\xrightarrow[n\to\infty]{}\mathsf{P}(A_1)\mathsf{P}(A_2).$$

Since T is ergodic,  $Y_n = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \mathbb{1}(T^{-k}A_2) \xrightarrow{Theorem \ 6.2.6} \mathbb{P}(A_2)$  a.s. By Lebesgue's theorem it follows from  $\mathbb{1}(A_1)Y_n \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{a.s.} \mathbb{1}(A_1)\mathbb{P}(A_2)$  that

$$\mathsf{E}(1(A_1)Y_n) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \mathsf{P}(A_1 \cap T^{-k}A_2) \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} \mathsf{P}(A_1)\mathsf{P}(A_2).$$

#### Lemma 6.2.6

If  $\{X_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  is a uniformly integrable sequence of random variables and  $p_{n,i} \ge 0$  are such that  $\sum_{i=1}^{n} p_{n,i} = 1$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  then the sequence of random variables  $Y_n = \sum_{i=1}^{n} p_{n,i} |X_i|, n \in \mathbb{N}$ , is uniformly integrable as well.

Without proof

**Corollary 6.2.2** Under the conditions of Theorem 6.2.6 it holds

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_k \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} \mathsf{E}(X_0 \mid J)$$

resp.

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_k \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} \mathsf{E}(X_0)$$

in the ergodic case.

**Proof** As in the proof of Theorem 6.2.6, assume  $\mathsf{E}(X_0|J) = 0$  w.l.o.g. If  $\{X_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}_0}$  is stationary, it is uniformly integrable because it then holds

$$\sup_{n} \mathsf{E}(|X_{n}|\mathsf{1}(|X_{n}| > \varepsilon)) = \mathsf{E}(|X_{0}|\mathsf{1}(|X_{0}| > \varepsilon)) \xrightarrow[\varepsilon \to \infty]{} 0,$$

since  $\mathsf{E}|X_0| < \infty$ . Let  $S_n = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_k = \sum_{i=1}^n p_{n,i} X_{i-1}, \ p_{n,i} = \frac{1}{n}, \ \tilde{S}_n = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} |X_k| = \sum_{i=1}^n p_{n,i} |X_{i-1}|$ . By Lemma 6.2.6,  $\{\tilde{S}_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$  is uniformly integrable and so is  $\{S_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  since  $S_n \leq \tilde{S}_n, \ 1(|S_n| > \varepsilon) \leq 1(\tilde{S}_n > \varepsilon)$ , consequently

$$\sup_{n\in\mathbb{N}}\mathsf{E}(|S_n|\mathbf{1}(|S_n|>\varepsilon))\leq \sup_{n\in\mathbb{N}}\mathsf{E}(|\tilde{S}_n|\mathbf{1}(|\tilde{S}_n|>\varepsilon))\quad \forall \varepsilon>0.$$

By Lemma 5.3.2, it follows from  $S_n \xrightarrow[k \to \infty]{a.s.} 0$  that  $S_n \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{L^1} 0$ .

# 6.3 Stationarity in the Wide Sense

Let  $\{X_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$  be a sequence of random variables, which is stationary in the wide sense:  $\mathsf{E}|X_n|^2 < \infty, n \in \mathbb{N}, \mathsf{E}X_n = const, n \in \mathbb{N}, \mathsf{cov}(X_n, X_m) = C(n-m), n, m \in \mathbb{Z}.$ 

#### 6.3.1 Correlation Theory

#### Theorem 6.3.1 (Herglotz):

 $C: \mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{R}$  is a positive semi-definite function iff there exists a finite measure  $\mu$  on  $(-\pi, \pi)$  such that

$$C(n)=\int_{-\pi}^{\pi}e^{inx}\mu(dx),\quad n\in\mathbb{Z}.$$

 $\mu$  is called the *spectral measure* of C.

#### Remark 6.3.1

Since the covariance function of a stationary sequence is positive semi-definite the above representation holds for an arbitrary covariance function C.

#### Proof of Theorem 6.3.1 ,, $\Leftarrow$ "

If  $C(n) = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} e^{inx} \mu(dx), n \in \mathbb{Z}$ , then for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , for all  $z_1, \ldots, z_n \in \mathbb{C}$  and  $t_1, \ldots, t_n \in \mathbb{Z}$ 

$$\sum_{i,j=1}^{n} z_j \bar{z}_j C(t_i - t_j) = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \left| \sum_{j=1}^{n} z_j e^{it_j x} \right|^2 \mu(dx) \ge 0.$$

Hence it follows that C is positive semi-definite.

 $,,\Rightarrow$  "

For all  $N \ge 1$ ,  $x \in [-\pi, \pi]$ , define the function  $g_N(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi N} \sum_{k,j=1}^N C(k-j) e^{-i(k-j)x} \ge 0$ , since C is positive semi-definite. It is continuous in x. It holds

$$g_N(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \sum_{|n| < N} \left( 1 - \frac{|n|}{N} \right) C(n) e^{-inx},$$

#### 6 Stationary Sequences of Random Variables

since there are N - |n| pairs  $(k, j) \in \{1, ..., N\}^2$  such that  $k - j = n, n \in \{-(N-1), ..., N-1\}$ . Define the measure  $\mu_N$  on  $([-\pi, \pi], \mathcal{B}_{[-\pi,\pi]})$  by  $\mu_N(B) = \int_B g_N(x) dx, B \in \mathcal{B}([-\pi, \pi])$ .

$$\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} e^{inx} \mu_N(dx) = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} e^{inx} g_N(x) dx = \begin{cases} \left(1 - \frac{|n|}{N}\right) C(n), & |n| < N, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise}, \end{cases}$$

since  $\{e^{inx}\}_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$  is an orthogonal system in  $L^2[-\pi,\pi]$ . For n = 0 it holds  $\mu_N([-\pi,\pi]) = C(0) < \infty$ , hence  $\{\frac{\mu_N}{C(0)}\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$  is a family of probability measures, which is tight since  $\mu_N$  have compact support  $[-\pi,\pi]$ . By Lemma 4.2.2, there exists a subsequence  $\{N_k\}_{k\in\mathbb{N}}, N_k \to \infty$  as  $k \to \infty$  such that  $\mu_{N_k} \xrightarrow{\omega}{k\to\infty} \mu$ .  $\mu$  is finite measure on  $[-\pi,\pi]$  and hence follows

$$\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} e^{inx} \mu(dx) = \lim_{k \to \infty} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} e^{inx} \mu_{N_k}(dx) = \lim_{k \to \infty} \left(1 - \frac{|n|}{N_k}\right) C(n) = C(n) \text{ for all } n \in \mathbb{Z}$$

by definition of weak convergence since  $e^{inx}$  is continuous and bounded in x.

Let  $X = \{X_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}}$  be a stationary in the wide sense sequence of random variables. Then the following spectral representation holds:

$$X_n \stackrel{a.s.}{=} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} e^{inx} Z(dx), \quad n \in \mathbb{Z},$$

where Z is an orthogonal random measure on  $([-\pi,\pi], \mathcal{B}([-\pi,\pi]))$ . Therefore both Z and  $I(f) = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x)Z(dx)$  are to be introduced for deterministic functions  $f: [-\pi,\pi] \to \mathbb{C}$ .

#### 6.3.2 Orthogonal Random Measures

Let us briefly sketch the construction scheme of Z and stochastic integral  $I(\cdot)$  on a  $\sigma$ -finite space  $\Lambda$ :

- 1. Z is defined on a semiring  $\mathcal{K}$  of subsets of a  $\sigma$ -finite phase space  $\Lambda$  (e.g.  $\Lambda = [-\pi, \pi]$  as above).
- 2. Z is defined on the algebra  $\mathcal{A}$ , which is generated by  $\mathcal{K}$ .
- 3. Define the integral I w.r.t. Z for a simple function on  $\Lambda$  where  $\mu(\Lambda) < \infty$  for a given measure  $\mu$ .
- 4. Define I as  $L^2 \lim_{n \to \infty} I(f_n)$  for arbitrary non-random functions  $f, f = \lim_{n \to \infty} f_n, f_n$  simple,  $\mu(\Lambda) < \infty$ .
- 5. Define I on a  $\sigma$ -finite space  $\Lambda = \bigcup_n \Lambda_n$ ,  $\mu(\Lambda_n) < \infty$ ,  $\Lambda_n \cap \Lambda_m = \emptyset$ ,  $n \neq m$ , as  $I(f) = \sum_n I_n(f \mid \Lambda_n)$ ,  $I_n$  integral w.r.t. Z on  $\Lambda_n$ . Hence Z is extended to  $\{A \in \sigma(\mathcal{A}) : \mu(A) < \infty\}$  as Z(A) = I(1(A)).

Now dwell on the above steps in more detail: Step 1

Let  $\mathcal{K}$  be a semiring of the subsets of  $\Lambda$  ( $\Lambda$  – arbitrary space), i.e. for all  $A, B \in \mathcal{K}$  it holds  $A \cap B \in \mathcal{K}$ ; if  $A \subset B$ , then there exist  $A_1, \ldots, A_n \in \mathcal{K}$ ,  $A_i \cap A_j = \emptyset$ ,  $i \neq j$ , such that  $B = A \cup \bigcup_{i=1}^n A_i$ .

- **Definition 6.3.1** 1. A complex-valued random (signed) measure  $Z = \{Z(B), B \in \mathcal{K}\}$ , given on the probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$ , is called *orthogonal* if
  - a)  $Z(B) \in L^2(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P}), B \in \mathcal{K},$
  - b)  $A, B \in \mathcal{K}, A \cap B = \emptyset \Rightarrow \langle Z(A), Z(B) \rangle_{L^2(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})} = \mathsf{E}(Z(A) \cdot \overline{Z(B)}) = 0,$
  - c) the  $\sigma$ -additivity holds: If  $B, B_1, \ldots, B_n, \ldots \in \mathcal{K}$ ,  $B = \bigcup_n B_n$ ,  $B_i \cap B_j = \emptyset$ ,  $i \neq j$ , then  $Z(B) \stackrel{a.s.}{=} \sum_n Z(B_n)$ , where the convergence of this series is interpreted in  $L^2$  sense.
  - 2. The orthogonal random measure Z is called *centered* if  $\mathsf{E}Z(B) = 0, B \in \mathcal{K}$ .
  - 3. The measure  $\mu = {\mu(B), B \in \mathcal{K}}$  defined by  $\mu(B) = \mathsf{E}|Z(B)|^2 = \langle Z(B), Z(B) \rangle_{L^2(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})}, B \in \mathcal{K}$ , is called *structure* (or *control*) *measure* of Z.

It is easy to see that  $\mu$  is in fact a measure on  $\mathcal{K}$ . If  $\Lambda \in \mathcal{K}$  then  $\mu$  is finite, otherwise  $\sigma$ -finite (here  $\Lambda = \bigcup_n \Lambda_n, \Lambda_n \in \mathcal{K}, \Lambda_n \cap \Lambda_m = \emptyset, n \neq m$ , such that  $\mu(\Lambda_n) < \infty$ ).

#### Exercise 6.3.1

Show that for all  $A, B \in \mathcal{K}$  it holds  $\langle Z(A), Z(B) \rangle_{L^2(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})} = \mu(A \cap B).$ 

#### Example 6.3.1

Let  $\Lambda = [0, \infty)$ ,  $\mathcal{K} = \{[a, b), 0 \le a < b < \infty\}$ , Z([a, b)) = W(b) - W(a),  $0 \le a < b < \infty$ , where  $W = \{W(t), t \ge 0\}$  is the Wiener process. Z is an orthogonal random measure on  $\mathcal{K}$  since W has independent increments. Analogously, this definition can be transferred to an arbitrary quadratic integrable stochastic process X with independent increments instead of W.

However, there is still an open question of existence of such measure Z on  $\mathcal{K}$ .

#### Theorem 6.3.2

Let  $\mu$  be a  $\sigma$ -finite measure on semiring  $\mathcal{K}$ . Then there exists a probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$  and a centered orthogonal random measure Z on  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$ , defined on  $\{B \in \mathcal{K} : \mu(B) < \infty\}$  with structure measure  $\mu$ .

<u>Proof</u>: cf. [4, Ch. VII].

Step 2

Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be the algebra which contains all finite unions of sets from  $\mathcal{K}$ . If Z is an orthogonal random measure with a  $\sigma$ -finite structure measure  $\mu$  as above, it can easily be extended to  $\mathcal{A}$ by additivity: for  $B \in \mathcal{A}$ ,  $B = \bigcup_{i=1}^{n} B_i$ ,  $B_i \in \mathcal{K}$ ,  $B_i \cap B_j = \emptyset$ ,  $i \neq j$ , we set  $Z(B) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} Z(B_i)$ . It can be easily shown that this extension does not depend on the choice of sets  $B_i$  making up the set B.

By the theorem of Caratheodory,  $\mu$  is uniquely continued on  $\mathcal{E} = \sigma(\mathcal{A})$ . However, in order to make the same extension for Z, a stochastic integral  $I(\cdot)$  with respect to Z has to be introduced first.

#### 6.3.3 Integral with respect to an orthogonal random measure

#### Step 3

Let  $(\Lambda, \mathcal{E}, \mu)$  be a measurable space with  $\mu(\Lambda) < \infty$ . Let  $f : \Lambda \to \mathbb{C}$  be a simple function, i.e.  $f(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} c_i \mathbb{1}(x \in B_i)$ , for  $c_i \in \mathbb{C}$  and  $B_i \in \mathcal{E}$ ,  $i = 1, \ldots, n$ , such that  $\bigcup_{i=1}^{n} B_i = \Lambda$ ,  $B_i \cap B_j = \emptyset, i \neq j$ .

#### Definition 6.3.2

The stochastic integral of f w.r.t. an orthogonal random measure Z (defined on  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$ ) is given by  $I(f) = \int_{\Lambda} f(x)Z(dx) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} c_i Z(B_i)$ .

#### Exercise 6.3.2

Show that the definition is correct, i.e. I(f) does not depend on the representation of f as a simple function.

#### Lemma 6.3.1 (Properties of I):

Let  $I(\cdot)$  be the integral w.r.t. the orthogonal random measure, defined on simple functions  $\Lambda \to \mathbb{C}$  as above. The following properties hold:

- 1. Isometry:  $\langle I(f), I(g) \rangle_{L^2(\Omega)} = \langle f, g \rangle_{L^2(\Lambda)}$ , where f and g are simple functions  $\Lambda \to \mathbb{C}$ ,  $\langle f, g \rangle_{L^2(\Lambda)} = \int_{\Lambda} f(x) \overline{g(x)} \mu(dx).$
- 2. Linearity: For every simple function  $f, g : \Lambda \to \mathbb{C}$  holds  $I(f+g) \stackrel{a.s.}{=} I(f) + I(g)$ .

#### Exercise 6.3.3

Prove it.

Step 4

Consider the space  $\Lambda$  with  $\mu(\Lambda) < \infty$ . Let now  $f \in L^2(\Lambda, \mathcal{E}, \mu)$ . Then there exists a sequence of simple functions  $f_n : \Lambda \to \mathbb{C}$  such that  $f_n \xrightarrow{L^2(\Lambda)}{n \to \infty} f$  (simple functions are tight in  $L^2(\Lambda)$ ). Then define  $I(f) = \lim_{n \to \infty} I(f_n)$ , whereas this limit is to be understood in the  $L^2(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$ sense. One can show that the definition of I(f) is independent of the choice of the sequence  $\{f_n\}$ .

#### Lemma 6.3.2

The statements of Lemma 6.3.1 hold for integral  $I : L^2(\Lambda, \mathcal{E}, \mu) \to L^2(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P}), \ \mu(\Lambda) < \infty$ .

**Proof** Use the continuity of  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ .

#### Remark 6.3.2

If Z is centered then  $\mathsf{E}I(f) = 0$  holds for arbitrary functions  $f \in L^2(\Lambda, \mathcal{E}, \mu)$ .

Step 5

Let now  $\Lambda$  be  $\sigma$ -finite, i.e.  $\Lambda = \bigcup_n \Lambda_n$ ,  $\mu(\Lambda_n) < \infty$ ,  $\Lambda_n \cap \Lambda_m = \emptyset$ ,  $n \neq m$ . Then for all  $f \in L^2(\Lambda, \mathcal{E}, \mu)$  holds  $f = \sum_n f|_{\Lambda_n}$ . Set  $\mathcal{E}_n = \sigma(\mathcal{K} \cap \Lambda_n)$ , and let  $\mu_n$  be the extension of  $\mu|_{\mathcal{K}_n}$  onto  $\mathcal{E}_n$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

On  $L^2(\Lambda_n, \mathcal{E}_n, \mu_n)$  the integral  $I_n$  w.r.t. Z is defined as in 1)-4). Now set  $I(f) := \sum_n I_n(f|_{\Lambda_n})$ .

#### Theorem 6.3.3

The map  $I : L^2(\Lambda, \mathcal{E}, \mu) \to L^2(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$  is an isometry. The random measure Z can be continued to  $\{B \in \mathcal{E} : \mu(B) < \infty\}$  as  $Z(B) := I(\mathbf{1}_B)$ .

#### 6.3.4 Spectral Representation

Let  $X = \{X(t), t \in T\}$  be an arbitrary complex-valued stochastic process on  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P}), T$ an arbitrary index set,  $\mathsf{E}|X(t)|^2 < \infty, t \in T$ ,  $\mathsf{E}X(t) = 0, t \in T$  (w.l.o.g., otherwise consider  $\tilde{X}(t) = X(t) - \mathsf{E}X(t), t \in T$ ), with  $C(s,t) = \mathsf{E}(X(s)\overline{X(t)}), s, t \in T$ .
## Theorem 6.3.4 (Karhunen):

The above process X has the spectral representation  $X(t) \stackrel{a.s.}{=} \int_{\Lambda} f(t,x)Z(dx), t \in T$ , where  $(\Lambda, \mathcal{E}, \mu)$  is a  $\sigma$ -finite measurable space and Z is a centered orthogonal random measure on  $\{B \in \mathcal{E} : \mu(B) < \infty\}$  with control measure  $\mu$ ,  $f(t, \cdot) \in L^2(\Lambda, \mathcal{E}, \mu), \forall t \in T$  if and only if there exists a system of functions  $f(t, \cdot) \in L^2(\Lambda, \mathcal{E}, \mu), t \in T$ , such that

 $C(s,t) = \int_{\Lambda} f(s,x)\overline{f(t,x)}\mu(dx), \ s,t \in T, \text{ and this system } F \text{ is complete in } L^2(\Lambda,\mathcal{E},\mu)$ (i.e.  $\langle f(t,\cdot),\psi \rangle_{L^2(\Lambda)} = 0, \ \psi \in L^2(\Lambda,\mathcal{E},\mu) \text{ for all } t \in T \text{ implies } \psi \equiv 0 \ \mu\text{-almost everywhere}).$ 

<u>Proof</u>: cf. [4, Ch. VII].

## Theorem 6.3.5

Let  $\{X_n, n \in \mathbb{Z}\}$  be a centered complex-valued wide sense stationary sequence of random variables on  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$ . Then there exists an orthogonal centered random measure Z on  $([-\pi, \pi], \mathcal{B}([-\pi, \pi]))$  (defined on  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$ ) such that  $X_n \stackrel{a.s.}{=} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} e^{inx} Z(dx), n \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

**Proof** Let  $F = \{e^{inx}, x \in [-\pi, \pi], n \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ . This system is complete in  $L^2([-\pi, \pi])$  (cf. the theory of the Fourier series). By Theorem 6.3.1, it follows that

$$C(n,m) = \mathsf{E}(X_n \overline{X}_m) = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} e^{inx} e^{-imx} \mu(dx),$$

where  $\mu$  is the spectral measure of X, thus a finite measure on  $([-\pi, \pi], \mathcal{B}([-\pi, \pi]))$ . By Theorem 6.3.4 there exists an orthogonal random measure on  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$  such that  $X_n \stackrel{a.s.}{=} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} e^{inx} Z(dx)$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

# Theorem 6.3.6 (Ergodic theorem for stationary (in the wide sense) sequences of random variables):

Under the conditions of Theorem 6.3.5 it holds

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_k \xrightarrow{L^2(\Omega)} Z(\{0\}) \text{ as } k \to \infty.$$

In particular if X is not centered, i.e.  $\mathsf{E}X_n = a, \ n \in \mathbb{Z}$ , then  $\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_k \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} a$ , if  $\underbrace{\mathsf{E}|Z(\{0\})|^2}_{\mu(\{0\})} = 0$ , thus Z (and therefore  $\mu$ ) have no atom at zero.

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{Proof} \ \text{Let} \ S_n &= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_k = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \underbrace{\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} e^{ikx} Z(dx). \text{ It holds } \psi_n(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{n} \frac{1 - e^{inx}}{1 - e^{ix}}, & x \neq 0 \\ 1, & x = 0 \end{cases}, \text{ for} \\ \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{all} \ n \in \mathbb{N}. \ \text{Then} \ S_n - Z(\{0\}) &= \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \underbrace{(\psi_n(x) - \mathbf{1}(x = 0))}_{\varphi_n(x)} Z(dx) = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \varphi_n(x) Z(dx). \\ \|S_n - Z(\{0\})\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 &= \|\varphi_n(x)\|_{L^2([-\pi,\pi],\mu)}^2 = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} |\varphi_n(x)|^2 \mu(dx) \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} 0 \text{ by Lebesgue theorem} \\ \text{since} \ |\varphi_n(x)| &\leq \begin{cases} \frac{2}{n|1 - e^{ix}|} \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} 0, & x \neq 0, \\ 0, & x = 0, \end{cases} x \in [-\pi,\pi]. \end{aligned}$$

# 6.4 Additional Exercises

#### Exercise 6.4.1

Let  $Z_1, Z_2, \ldots$  be a sequence of random variables such that the series  $\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} Z_i$  converges almost surely. Let  $a_1, a_2, \ldots$  be a monotone increasing sequence of positive (deterministic) numbers with  $a_n \to \infty$ ,  $n \to \infty$ . Show that

$$\frac{1}{a_n}\sum_{k=1}^n a_k Z_k \stackrel{a.s.}{\to} 0, \quad n \to \infty.$$

#### Exercise 6.4.2

Let X be a random variable on a probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathsf{P})$  and  $T : \Omega \to \Omega$  a measure preserving map. Show that  $\mathsf{E}X = \mathsf{E}(X \circ T)$ , i.e.

$$\int_{\Omega} X(T(\omega)) \mathsf{P}(d\omega) = \int_{\Omega} X(\omega) \mathsf{P}(d\omega).$$

(Hint: algebraic induction)

#### Exercise 6.4.3

Let  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P) = ([0, 1), \mathcal{B}([0, 1)), \nu)$ , where  $\nu$  denotes the Lebesgue measure on [0, 1). Let  $\lambda \in (0, 1)$ .

- 1. Show that  $T(x) = (x + \lambda) \pmod{1}$  is a measure preserving map, where  $a \pmod{b} := a \left|\frac{a}{b}\right| \cdot b$  for  $a \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $b \in \mathbb{N}$ .
- 2. Show that  $T(x) = \lambda x$  and  $T(x) = x^2$  are not measure preserving.

#### Exercise 6.4.4

Let a stationary sequence  $X_n, n \ge 0$  be generated by a random variable  $X_0$  and a measure preserving map T. Assume that X is *m*-dependent, that is, families of random variables  $\{X_k, k \le n\}$  and  $\{X_j, j \ge n + m\}$  are independent for any n. Prove that T is ergodic.

# Exercise 6.4.5

Let  $\Omega = \mathbb{R}^2$  and P be a normal distribution in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  with zero mean and identity matrix of covariances. Assume that transformation  $T : \Omega \to \Omega$  acts in polar coordinates as  $T((r, \varphi)) = (r, 2\varphi \pmod{2\pi}), r \ge 0, 0 \le \varphi < 2\pi$ .

- 1. Prove that T preserves the measure P.
- 2. Find the limit

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{1}{n} \left( \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} f(T^k(x)) \right), \ x \in \mathbb{R}^2$$

for  $f_1 = x_1^2$ ,  $f_2(x) = x_1, x_2$ .

Hint: At first, prove this fact for the functions of the form  $f(r, \varphi) = \sum_{k=0}^{m} c_k \mathbb{I}\{\varphi \in [\alpha_k, \beta_k]\}\mathbb{I}\{r \in [x_k, y_k]\}$ , and then pass to a limit.

# Exercise 6.4.6

Let  $X_n, n \ge 0$  be a centered Gaussian stationary sequence with covariance function  $C(n) = \mathsf{E}(X_k X_{k+n})$ . Let  $C(n) \to 0, n \to \infty$ . Prove that the measure preserving map T, which corresponds to X, i.e.  $X_n \stackrel{d}{=} X_0(T^n)$ , is mixing (on average) and, consequently, ergodic.

# Exercise 6.4.7

Let  $X_n, n \ge 0$  be a stationary sequence, and  $g : \mathbb{R}^{\infty} \to \mathbb{R}$  be a measurable function. Prove that the random sequence  $Y_n := g(X_{n+1}, X_{n+2}, \ldots), n \ge 0$  is stationary as well. Prove that if  $\{X_n, n \ge 0\}$  is ergodic then the sequence  $\{Y_n, n \ge 0\}$  is ergodic, too.

#### Exercise 6.4.8

Let  $X_n = \cos(n\varphi), n \ge 1$ , where  $\varphi$  is  $U[-\pi, \pi]$ -distributed random variable. Prove that the random sequence  $\{X_n, n \ge 1\}$  is wide sense stationary but not stationary in the strict sense.

#### Exercise 6.4.9

Let  $\{N_t, t \ge 0\}$  be a Poisson process with intensity  $\lambda > 0$ . Consider the process  $X_t := \xi(-1)^{N_t}$ ,  $t \ge 0$ , where  $\xi$  is a random variable independent of N with  $\mathsf{P}(\xi = -1) = \mathsf{P}(\xi = 1) = 1/2$ .

- 1. Compute the mean value and the covariance function of the process X. Show that the random sequence  $\{X_n, n \ge 0\}$  is stationary in wide sense.
- 2. Find the spectral density of the covariance function of the random sequence  $\{X_n, n \ge 0\}$ .

#### Exercise 6.4.10

Let  $\{W(t), t \in \mathbb{R}_+\}$  be a Wiener process. Define the family of random variables Z((a, b]) := W(b) - W(a) on the semiring  $\mathcal{K} = \{(a, b], -\infty < a < b < \infty\}$ .

- 1. Show that Z is an orthogonally scattered random measure on  $\mathcal{K}$ .
- 2. Let I(f) be the stochastic integral of  $f \in L^2(\mathbb{R})$  with respect to Z. Show that I(f) is a Gaussian random variable. Find  $\mathsf{E}I(f)$  and  $\mathsf{E}[I(f)^2]$ .
- 3. Prove that I(f) is a Gaussian random variable for any orthogonally scattered Gaussian random measure Z.

### Exercise 6.4.11

Let Z be the orthogonal random measure from Exercise 6.4.10.

- 1. Find its structure measure  $\mu$ .
- 2. Find

$$\mathsf{E}\left|\int_0^\pi \sin t \ dZ(t)\right|^2.$$

3. Find

$$\mathsf{E}\left(\int_0^1 t \ dZ(t) \overline{\int_0^1 (2+t^2) \ dZ(t)}\right)$$

# Bibliography

- D. Applebaum. Lévy processes and stochastic calculus. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2004.
- [2] A. A. Borovkov. Wahrscheinlichkeitstheorie. Eine Einfürung. Birkhäuser, Basel, 1976.
- [3] A. A. Borovkov. Probability theory. Universitext. Springer, London, 2013. Translated from the 2009 Russian fifth edition by O. B. Borovkova and P. S. Ruzankin, Edited by K. A. Borovkov.
- [4] A.V. Bulinski and A.N. Shiryaev. Theory of Stochastic Processes. FIZMATLIT, Moscow, 2005.
- [5] R. P. Dobrow. Introduction to stochastic processes with R. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., Hoboken, NJ, 2016.
- [6] W. Feller. An introduction to probability theory and its applications. Vol. I/II. John Wiley & Sons Inc., New York, 1970/71.
- [7] P. Gänssler and W. Stute. Wahrscheinlichkeitstheorie. Springer, Berlin, 1977.
- [8] G. Grimmett and D. Stirzaker. Probability and random processes. Oxford University Press, New York, 2001.
- [9] C. Hesse. Angewandte Wahrscheinlichkeitstheorie. Vieweg, Braunschweig, 2003.
- [10] I.A. Ibragimov and Y. A. Rozanov. Gaussian random processes, volume 9 of Applications of Mathematics. Springer-Verlag, New York-Berlin, 1978. Translated from the Russian by A. B. Aries.
- [11] O. Kallenberg. Foundations of modern probability. Springer, New York, 2002.
- [12] J. F. C. Kingman. Poisson processes. Oxford University Press, New York, 1993.
- [13] A. Klenke. Wahrscheinlichkeitstheorie. Springer, 2008.
- [14] A. N. Kolmogorov and S. V. Fomin. Reelle Funktionen und Funktionalanalysis. VEB Deutscher Verlag der Wissenschaften, Berlin, 1975.
- [15] N. Krylov. Introduction to the theory of random processes. American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 2002.
- [16] S. Resnick. Adventures in stochastic processes. Birkhäuser, Boston, MA, 1992.
- [17] G. Samorodnitsky and M. Taqqu. Stable non-Gaussian random processes. Chapman & Hall, New York, 1994.

- [18] K.-I. Sato. Lévy Processes and Infinite Divisibility. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1999.
- [19] A. N. Shiryaev. Probability. Springer, New York, 1996.
- [20] A. V. Skorokhod. Basic principles and applications of probability theory. Springer, Berlin, 2005.
- [21] J. Stoyanov. Counterexamples in probability. John Wiley & Sons Ltd., Chichester, 1987.
- [22] A. D. Wentzel. Theorie zufälliger Prozesse. Birkhäuser, Basel, 1979.
- [23] V. M. Zolotarev. One-dimensional stable distributions, volume 65 of Translations of Mathematical Monographs. American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 1986.